

Incipit Liber Septimus. P. iii. 84

- i. *Omnibus in causis sapiens doctrina salutem
 Consequitur, nec habet quis nisi doctus opem.
 Naturam superat doctrina, viro quod et ortus
 Ingenii docilis non dedit, ipsa dabit.
 Non ita discretus hominum per climata regnat,
 Quin, magis ut sapiat, indiget ipse scole.*

[THE EDUCATION OF
 ALEXANDER.]

I GENIUS the prest of love,
 Mi Sone, as thou hast preid above
 That I the Scole schal declare
 Of Aristotle and ek the fare
 Of Alisandre, hou he was tauht,
 I am somdel therof destraucht;
 For it is nocht to the matiere
 Of love, why we sitten hiere
 To schryve, so as Venus bad.
 Bot natheles, for it is glad,
 So as thou seist, for thin aprise
 To hiere of suche thinges wise,
 Wherof thou myht the time lisse,
 So as I can, I schal the wisse:
 For wisdom is at every throwe
 Above alle other thing to knowe
 In loves cause and elleswhere.
 Forthi, my Sone, unto thin Ere,
 Though it be nocht in the registre
 Of Venus, yit of that Calistre
 And Aristotle whylom write
 To Alisandre, thou schalt wite.
 Bot for the lores ben diverse,

Quia omnis doctrina bona humano regimini salutem confert, in hoc septimo libro ad instanciam Amantis languidi intendit Genius illam ex qua Philosophi et Astrologi philosophie doctrinam Regem Alexandrum imbuerunt, secundum aliquid declarare. Dividit enim philosophiam in tres partes, quarum prima Theorica, secunda Rhetorica, tertia Practica nuncupata est, de quarum condicionibus subsequenter per singula tractabit.

P. iii. 85

20

[THREE PARTS OF
PHILOSOPHY.]

I thenke ferst to the reherce
 The nature of Philosophie,
 Which Aristotle of his clergie,
 Wys and expert in the sciences,
 Declareth thilke intelligences,
 As of thre pointz in principal.
 Wherof the ferste in special 30
 Is Theorique, which is grounded
 On him which al the world hath founded,
 Which comprehendeth al the lore.
 And forto loken overmore,
 Next of sciences the seconde
 Is Rethorique, whos faconde
 Above alle othre is eloquent:
 To telle a tale in juggement
 So wel can noman speke as he.
 The laste science of the thre 40
 It is Practique, whos office
 The vertu tryeth fro the vice,
 And techeth upon goode thewes
 To fle the compaignie of schrewes,
 Which stant in disposicion P. iii. 86
 Of mannes free eleccion.
 Practique enformeth ek the reule,
 Hou that a worthi king schal reule
 His Realme bothe in werre and pes.
 Lo, thus danz Aristotiles 50
 These thre sciences hath divided
 And the nature also decided,
 Wherof that ech of hem schal serve.
 The ferste, which is the conserve
 And keper of the remnant,
 As that which is most sufficient
 And chief of the Philosophie,
 If I therof schal specefie
 So as the Philosophre tolde,
 Nou herkne, and kep that thou it holde. 60

25 matier AdBT 28 Declared AdBT 29 thre] je Hi,
 AdBT, W 36 And jat AM . . . B₁

[I. THEORIC.]

- ii. *Prima creatorem dat scire sciencia summum:*
Qui caput agnoscit, sufficit illud ei.
Plura viros quandoque iuuat nescire, set illud
Quod videt expediens, sobrius ille sapit.

Of Theorique principal
 The Philosophre in special
 The proprettees hath determined,
 As thilke which is enluminod
 Of wisdom and of hih prudence
 Above alle othre in his science:
 And stant departed upon thre,
 The ferste of which in his degre
 Is cleped in Philosophie
 The science of Theologie,
 That other named is Phisique, 70
 The thridde is seid Mathematique.
 Theologie is that science
 Which unto man yifst evidence
 Of thing which is nocht bodely,
 Wherof men knowe redely
 The hibe almyhti Trinite,
 Which is o god in unite
 Withouten ende and beginnyng
 And creatour of alle thinge, 80
 Of hevene, of erthe and ek of helle.
 Wherof, as olde bokes telle,
 The Philosophre in his resoun
 Wrot upon this conclusioun,
 And of his wrytinge in a clause
 He clepeth god the ferste cause,
 Which of himself is thilke good,
 Withoute whom nothing is good,
 Of which that every creature
 Hath his beinge and his nature. 90
 After the beinge of the thinges
 Ther ben thre formes of beinges:
 Thing which began and ende schal,

Hic tractat de prima parte Philosophie, que Theorica dicitur, cuius natura triplici dotata est sciencia, scilicet Theologia, Phisica et Mathematica: set primo illam partem Theologie declarat.

70
 P. iii. 87

[THEOLOGY.]

80

90

Nota quod triplex dicitur essencia: Prima temporanea, que incipit et desinit, Se-

Latin Verses ii. a capit AdBT, W
 87 is thilke] jps ilke Hi . . . B₁ 89 S resumes 92 thre]
 je AMH₁XRLB₁

[THEOLOGY.]

cunda perpetua, que
incipit et non desinit,
Tercia sempiterna,
que nec incipit nec
desinit.

That thing is cleped temporal;
Ther is also be other weie
Thing which began and schal nocht deie,
As Soules, that ben spirituel,
Here beinge is perpetuel:
Bot ther is on above the Sonne,
Whos time nevere was begonne,
And endeles schal evere be;
That is the god, whos mageste
Alle othre thinges schal governe,
And his beinge is sempitern.
The god, to whom that al honour
Belongeth, he is creatour,
And othre ben hise creatures:
Thè god commandeth the natures
That thei to him obeien alle;
Withouten him, what so befall,
Her myht is non, and he mai al:
The god was evere and evere schal,
And thei begonne of his assent;
The times alle be present
To god, to hem and alle unknowe,
Bot what him liketh that thei knowe:
Thus bothe an angel and a man,
The whiche of al that god began
Be chief, obeien goddes myht,
And he stant endeles upriht.
To this science ben prive
The clerkes of divinite,
The whiche unto the poeple prechen
The feith of holi cherche and techen,
Which in som cas upon believe
Stant more than thei conne prieve
Be weie of Argument sensible:
Bot natheles it is credible,
And doth a man gret meede have,
To him that thenkth himself to save.
Theologie in such a wise

100
P. iii. 88

110

120

130

P. iii. 89

108 The god] And he B The T He Ad 109 That] And AdBT
119 By chief AM . . . C, W je chief L

Of hih science and hih aprise
Above alle othre stant unlike,
And is the ferste of Theorique.

Phisique is after the secounde,
Thurgh which the Philosophre hath founde
To techen sondri knowlechinges
Upon the bodiliche thinges.
Of man, of beste, of herbe, of ston,
Of fisch, of foughl, of everychon
That ben of bodely substance,
The nature and the circumstance
Thurgh this science it is ful soght,
Which vailleth and which vailleth nocht.

The thridde point of Theorique,
Which cleped is Mathematique,
Devided is in sondri wise
And stant upon diverse aprise.
The ferste of whiche is Arsmetique,
And the secounde is seid Musique,
The thridde is ek Geometrie,
Also the fertbe Astronomie.

Of Arsmetique the matiere
Is that of which a man mai liere
What Algorisme in nombre amonteth,
Whan that the wise man acompteth
After the formel proprete
Of Algorismes Abece:
Be which multiplicacioun
Is mad and diminucioun
Of sommes be thexperience
Of this Art and of this science.

The secounde of Mathematique,
Which is the science of Musique,
That techeth upon Armonie
A man to make melodie
Be vois and soun of instrument
Thurgh notes of acordement,
The whiche men pronounce alofte,
Nou scharpe notes and nou softe,

161 experience M . . . B, Δ

[PHYSICS.]

Nota de secunda
parte Theorice, que
Phisica dicitur.

140

[MATHEMATICS.]

Nota de tercia parte
Theorice, que Mathe-
matica dicitur, cuius
condicio quatuor in
se continet intelligen-
cias, scilicet Arsmeti-
cam, Musicam, Ge-
ometriam et Astro-
nomiam: set primo
de Artismetice natura
dicere intendit.

150

160

P. iii. 90

Nota de Musica, que
secunda pars Artis
Mathematice dicitur.

170

[MATHEMATICS.]

Nou hihe notes and nou lowe,
 As be the gamme a man mai knowe,
 Which techeth the prolacion
 Of note and the condicion.
 Mathematique of his science
 Hath yit the thridde intelligence
 Full of wisdom and of clergie
 And cleped is Geometrie,
 Thurgh which a man hath thilke sleyhte,
 Of lengthe, of brede, of depthe, of heyhte 180
 To knowe the proporcion
 Be verrai calculacion

Of this science: and in this wise
 These olde Philosophres wise,
 Of al this worldes erthe round,
 Hou large, hou thikke was the ground,
 Controevden the experience;
 The cercle and the circumference
 Of every thing unto the hevене
 Thei setten point and mesure evēne. 190

Mathematique above therthe P. iii. 91
 Of hyh science hath yit the ferthe,
 Which spekth upon Astronomie
 And techeth of the sterres hihe,
 Beginnyng upward fro the mone.
 Bot ferst, as it was forto done,
 This Aristotle in other thing
 Unto this worthi yonge king
 The kinde of every element
 Which stant under the firmament, 200
 Hou it is mad and in what wise,
 Fro point to point he gan devise.

iii. *Quatuor omnipotens elementa creavit origo,
 Quatuor et venti partibus ora dabat.
 Nostraque quadruplici complexio sorte creatur,
 Corpore sicque suo stat variatus homo.*

Tofore the creacion
 Of eny worldes stacion,

177 margin vocat A . . . Bs (except E) 190 The F

Nota de tercia specie
 Artis Mathematicæ,
 quam Geometriam vo-
 rant.

[CREATION OF THE
FOUR ELEMENTS.]

Of hevēne, of erthe, or eke of helle,
 So as these olde bokes telle,
 As soun tofore the song is set
 And yit thei ben togedre knet,
 Riht so the hihe pourveance
 Tho hadde under his ordinance
 A gret substance, a gret matiere,
 Of which he wolde in his manere
 These othre things make and forme.
 For yit withouten eny forme
 Was that matiere universal,
 Which hihte Ylem in special.
 Of Ylem, as I am enformed, P. iii. 92
 These elementz ben mad and formed,
 Of Ylem elementz they hote
 After the Scolē of Aristote, 210
 Of whiche if more I schal reherce,
 Foure elementz ther ben diverse.

The ferste of hem men erthe calle,
 Which is the lowest of hem alle,
 And in his forme is schape round,
 Substantial, strong, sadd and sound,
 As that which mad is sufficient
 To bere up al the remenant.
 For as the point in a compas
 Stant evēne amidde, riht so was 220
 This erthe set and schal abyde,
 That it may swerve to no side,
 And hath his centre after the lawe
 Of kinde, and to that centre drawe
 Desireth every worldes thing,
 If ther ne were no lettyng.

Above therthe kepth his bounde
 The water, which is the secounde
 Of elementz, and al withoute
 It environeth therthe aboute. 230
 Bot as it scheweth, nocht forthi
 This soubtil water myhtely,

207 margin interim om. BA 236 ther ne] }er]e (the erthe
 &c.) ne AMH: XGEL }er]e (om. ne) C er]e ne R line om. W

[CREATION OF THE
FOUR ELEMENTS.]

Hic interim tractat
 de creacione quatuor
 Elementorum, scilicet
 terre, aque, aeris et
 ignis, necnon et de
 210 eorum naturis, nam
 et singulis proprie-
 tates singule attri-
 buuntur.

Nota de Terra, quod
 est primum elemen-
 tum.

Philosophus Vnum-
 quodque naturaliter
 appetit suum centrum.

Nota de Aqua, quod
 est secundum elemen-
 tum.

[CREATION OF THE
FOUR ELEMENTS.]

Thogh it be of himselve softe,
The strengthe of therthe perceth ofte;
For riht as veines ben of blod
In man, riht so the water fiod
Therthe of his cours makth ful of veines, P. iii. 93

Als wel the helles as the pleines.
And that a man may sen at ye,
For wher the hulles ben most hyhe, 250
Ther mai men welle stremes finde:
So proveth it be weie of kinde
The water heyher than the lond.

Nota de Aere, quod
est tercium elemen-
tum.

And over this nou understand,
Air is the thridde of elementz,
Of whos kinde his aspiementz
Takth every liffish creature,
The which schal upon erthe endure:
For as the fissh, if it be dreie, 260
Mot in defaute of water deie,
Riht so withouten Air on lyve
No man ne beste myhte thryve,
The which is mad of fleissh and bon;

Nota qualiter Aer
in tribus Periferiis di-
uiditur.

There is outake of alle non.
This Air in Periferiis thre
Divided is of such degre,
Benethe is on and on amide,
To whiche above is set the thridde:
And upon the divisions 270
There ben diverse impressions
Of moist and ek of drye also,
Whiche of the Sonne bothe tuo
Ben drawe and haled upon hy,
And maken cloudes in the Sky,
As schewed is at mannes sihte;
Wherof be day and ek be nyhte
After the times of the yer
Among ous upon Erthe her
In sondri wise thinges falle.

De prima Aeris
Periferia.

The ferste Periferie of alle 280
257 lyfliche AM liueliche W lif iche H₁ fiasche Δ
262 Nomans, F 269 the om, AM 275 And B

[CREATION OF THE
FOUR ELEMENTS.]

Engendreth Myst and overmore
The dewes and the Frostes here,
After thilke intersticion
In which thei take impression.

De secunda Aeris
Periferia.

Fro the seconde, as bokes sein,
The moiste dropes of the reyn
Descenden into Middilerthe,
And tempreth it to sed and Erthe,
And doth to springe grass and flour.
And ofte also the grete schour 290
Out of such place it mai be take,
That it the forme schal forsake
Of reyn, and into snow be torned;
And ek it mai be so sojorned
In sondri places up alofte,
That into hail it torneth ofte.

De tercia Aeris
Periferia.

The thridde of thair after the lawe
Thurgh such matiere as up is drawe
Of dreie thing, as it is ofte,
Among the cloudes upon lofte, 300
And is so clos, it may nocht oute,—
Thanne is it chased sore aboute,
Til it to fyr and leyt be falle,
And thanne it brekth the cloudes alle,
The whiche of so gret noyse craken,
That thei the feerful thonder maken.
The thonderstrok smit er it leyte, P. iii. 95
And yit men sen the fyr and leyte,
The thonderstrok er that men hier:
So mai it wel be proeved hier 310
In thing which schewed is fro feer,
A mannes yhe is there nerr
Thanne is the soun to mannes Ere.
And natheles it is gret feere
Bothe of the strok and of the fyr,
Of which is no recoverir
In place wher that thei descende,
Bot if god wolde his grace sende.

298 is vpdrawe (vp drawe) C, AdBT, W 300 vpon alofte AM
vp alofte T, Δ 303 befall H₁EC, SAdB, W
R

[CREATION OF THE
FOUR ELEMENTS.]

Notahic qualiter Ig-
nes, quos noctanter in
Aere discurrere vide-
mus, secundum varias
apparencie formas va-
ria gestant nomina :
quorum primus Assub,
secundus Capra sa-
liens, tercius Egēs et
quartus Daali in libris
Philosophorum nun-
cupatus est.

And forto speken over this,
In this partie of thair it is 320
That men fulofte sen be nyhte
The fyr in sondri forme alyhte.
Somtime the fyrdrake it semeth,
And so the lewed poeple it demeth ;
Somtime it semeth as it were
A Sterre, which that glydeth there :
Bot it is nouthor of the tuo,
The Philosophre telleth so,
And seith that of impressions
Thurgh diverse exalacions 330
Upon the cause and the matiere
Men sen diverse forme appiere
Of fyr, the which hath sondri name.
Assub, he seith, is thilke same,
The which in sondry place is founde,
Whanne it is falle doun to grounde,
So as the fyr it hath aneled, P. iii. 96
Lich unto slym which is congeled.
Of exalacion I finde
Fyr kinfed of the fame kinde, 340
Bot it is of an other forme ;
Wherof, if that I schal conforme
The figure unto that it is,
These olde clerkes tellen this,
That it is lik a Got skippende,
And for that it is such semende,
It hatte Capra saliens.
And ek these Astronomiens
An other fyr also, be nyhte 350
Which scheweth him to mannes syhte,
Thei clepen Egēs, the which brenneth
Lik to the corrant fyr that renneth
Upon a corde, as thou hast sein,

319 margin hic om. A . . . B₁, B, W. (Nota hic om. Δ) 323 fyry
drake E, BT 330 exaltaciouns AM 336 falle doun
to gr.] doun (downe) to þe gr. (om. falle) AM . . . B₁ falle
doun to þe grounde J, T, W (thre grounde T) 339 exaltacioun
AMH.

[CREATION OF THE
FOUR ELEMENTS.]

Whan it with poudre is so besein
Of Sulphre and othre thinges mo.
Ther is an other fyr also,
Which semeth to a mannes yhe
Be nyhtes time as thogh ther flyhe
A dragon brennende in the Sky,
And that is cleped proprely 360
Daaly, wherof men sein fulofte,
'Lo, wher the fyr drake alofte
Fleth up in thair!' and so thei demen.
Bot why the fyres suche semen
Of sondri formes to beholde,
The wise Philosophre tolde,
So as tofore it hath ben herd. P. iii. 97
Lo thus, my Sone, hou it hath ferd :
Of Air the due proprete
In sondri wise thou myht se, 370
And hou under the firmament
It is ek the thridde element,
Which environeth bothe tuo,
The water and the lond also.
And forto tellen overthis
Of elementz which the ferthe is,
That is the fyr in his degre,
Which environeth thother thre
And is withoute moist al drye.
Bot lest nou what seith the clergie ; 380
For upon hem that I have seid
The creatour hath set and leid
The kinde and the complexion
Of alle mennes nacion.
Foure elementz sondri ther be,
Lich unto whiche of that degre
Among the men ther ben also
Complexions foure and nomo,
Wherof the Philosophre treteth,
That he nothing behinde leteth, 390
And seith hou that thei ben diverse,

Confessor.

Nota de Igne, quod
est quartum elemen-
tum.

361 Daily H₁ Baaly CL 365 forme AdBT 368 hou it
om. Ad T it B 374 sond(e) AMXGERCB₁

So as I schal to thee reherse.

He which natureth every kinde,
The myhti god, so as I finde,
Of man, which is his creature,
Hath so devided the nature,
That non til other wel acordeth : P. iii. 98
And be the cause it so discordeth,
The lif which fieleth the seknesse
Mai stonde upon no sekernesse. 400

Of therthe, which is cold and drye,
The kinde of man Malencolie
Is cleped, and that is the ferste,
The most ungoodlich and the werste ;
For unto loves werk on nyht
Him lacketh bothe will and myht :
No wonder is, in lusty place
Of love though he lese grace.
What man hath that complexion,
Full of ymaginacion 410
Of dredes and of wrathful thoghtes,
He fret himselven al to noghtes.

The water, which is moyste and cold,
Makth fleume, which is manyfold
Foryetel, slou and wery sone
Of every thing which is to done :
He is of kinde sufficient
To holde love his covenant,
Bot that him lacketh appetit,
Which longeth unto such delit. 420

What man that takth his kinde of thair,
He schal be lyht, he schal be fair,
For his complexion is blood.
Of alle ther is non so good,
For he hath bothe will and myht
To plesse and paie love his riht :
Wher as he hath love undertake,
Wrong is if that he be forsake. P. iii. 99

The fyr of his condicion

393 The CL Be AdT 429 fyr] ferst B fir] Ad

[THE FOUR COM-
PLEXIONS OF MAN.]

Nota hic qualiter
secundum naturam
quatuor elementorum
quatuor in humano
corpore complexi-
ones, scilicet Malen-
colia, Fleuma, Sanguis
et Colera, naturaliter
constituuntur: unde
primo de Malencolia
dicendum est.

De complexionem
Fleumatis.

De complexionem
Sanguinis.

De complexionem
Colere.

Appreth the complexion
Which in a man is Colre hote,
Whos propretes ben dreie and hote :
It makth a man ben enginous
And swift of fote and ek irous ;
Of contek and folhastifnesse
He hath a riht gret besinesse,
To thenke of love and litel may :
Though he behote wel a day,
On nyht whan that he wole assaie,
He may ful evele his dette paie. 430

After the kinde of thelement,
Thus stant a mannes kinde went,
As touchende his complexion,
Upon sondri division
Of dreie, of moiste, of chele, of hete,
And ech of hem his oghne sete
Appropred hath withinne a man.
And ferst to telle as I began,

The Splen is to Malencolie
Assigned for herbergerie :

The moiste fleume with his cold
Hath in the lunges for his hold
Ordeined him a propre stede,
To duelle ther as he is bede :

To the Sanguin complexion
Nature of hire inspeccion
A propre hous hath in the livere P. iii. 100
For his duellinge mad deliver :

The dreie Colre with his hete
Be weie of kinde his propre sete 460
Hath in the galle, wher he duelleth,
So as the Philosophre telleth.

Nou over this is forto wite,
As it is in Phisique write
Of livere, of lunge, of galle, of splen,

438 be hote AJMH.XL, AdTA, K 445 chele] cold(e) AM . . . B₂
449 margin est om. B 451]e cold AdBT margin domus
J, S, B, F domus est ACB₂ &c. 456 his AdBT hysse X 464
margin cordi om. AM . . . B₂

430 [THE FOUR COM-
PLEXIONS OF MAN.]

440 Nota qualiter qua-
tuor complexiones
quatuor in homine
habitationes diuisim
possident.

450 Splen domus est
Malencolie.

Pulmo domus Fleu-
matis.

Epar domus San-
guinis.

Fel domus Colere.

Nota de Stomacho,
qui vna cum aliis cordi
specialius deseruit.

[THE FOUR COM-
PLEXIONS OF MAN.]

Thei alle unto the herte ben
 Servantz, and ech in his office
 Entendeth to don him service,
 As he which is chief lord above.
 The livere makth him forto love, 470
 The lunge yifth him weie of speche,
 The galle serveth to do wreche,
 The Splen doth him to lawhe and pleie,
 Whan al unclennesse is aweie:
 Lo, thus hath ech of hem his dede.
 And to sustienen hem and fede
 In time of recreacion,
 Nature hath in creacion
 The Stomach for a comun Coc
 Ordeined, so as seith the boc. 480
 The Stomach coc is for the halle,
 And builleth mete for hem alle,
 To make hem myghty forto serve
 The herte, that he schal noght sterve:
 For as a king in his Empire
 Above alle othre is lord and Sire,
 So is the herte principal, P. iii. 101
 To whom reson in special
 Is yove as for the governance. 490
 And thus nature his pourveance
 Hath mad for man to liven hiere;
 Bot god, which hath the Soule diere,
 Hath formed it in other wise.
 That can noman pleinli devise;
 Bot as the clerkes ous enforme,
 That lich to god it hath a forme,
 Thurgh which figure and which liknesse
 The Soule hath many an hyh noblesse
 Appropred to his oghne kinde.
 Bot ofte hir wittes be mad blinde 500
 Al onliche of this ilke point,
 That hir abydinge is conjoint

469 chief om. H₁ . . . B₂ (is chief om. R) 478 increacioun
 AM . . . B₄, W 480 Ordeineþ AH₁ . . . B₂ Ordeyne M
 483 forto] to AM 492 hath] jat AM . . . B₂

[THE SOUL OF MAN.]

[THE SOUL OF MAN.]

Forth with the bodi forto duelle:
 That on desireth toward helle,
 That 'other upward to the hevene;
 So schul thei nevere stonde in evene,
 Bot if the fleissh be overcome
 And that the Soule have holi nome
 The governance, and that is selde, 510
 Whil that the fleissh him mai bewelde.
 Al erthli thing which 'god began
 Was only mad to serve man;
 Bot he the Soule al only made
 Himselven forto serve and glade.
 Alle othre bestes that men finde
 Thei serve unto here oghne kinde,
 Bot to reson the Soule serveth; P. iii. 102
 Wherof the man his thonk deserveth
 And get him with hise werkes goode
 The perdurable lyves foode. 520

Of what matiere it schal be told,
 A tale lyketh manyfold
 The betre, if it be spoke plein:
 Thus thinke I forto torne ayein
 And telle plenerly therfore
 Of therthe, wherof nou tofore
 I spak, and of the water eke,
 So as these olde clerkes spieke,
 And sette proprely the bounde
 After the forme of Mappemounde, 530
 Thurgh which the ground be pourparties
 Departed is in thre parties,
 That is Asie, Aufrique, Europe,
 The whiche under the hevene cope,
 Als ferr as streccheth eny ground,
 Begripeth al this Erthe round.
 Bot after that the hihe wriche
 The water weies let out seche

[THE DIVISION OF
THE EARTH.]

Hic loquitur vlti-
 rius de diuisione Terre
 que post diluuium
 tribus filiis Noe in tres
 partes, scilicet Asiam,
 Affricam et Europam
 diuidebatur.

508 haþ AMH₁, AdBTΔ, WK 510 fleissh(e) may H₁XRCLB₂
 fleissh may him E 521 be told JGC, B betold (bitold) A, S, F
 525 priuely AJM plainly B₂ 528 bookes B

[THE DIVISION OF
THE EARTH.]

And overgo the helles hye,
Which every kinde made dye 540
That upon Middelerthe stod,
Outake Noë and his blod,
His Sones and his doughtres thre,
Thei were sauf and so was he;—
Here names who that rede rihte,
Sem, Cam, Japhet the brethren hihte;—
And whanne thilke almyhty hond P. iii. 103
Withdrouh the water fro the lond,
And al the rage was aweie,
And Erthe was the mannes weie, 550
The Sones thre, of whiche I tolde,
Riht after that hemselve wolde,
This world departe thei begonne.
Asie, which lay to the Sonne
Upon the Marche of orient,
Was graunted be comun assent
To Sem, which was the Sone eldeste;
For that partie was the beste
And double as moche as othre tuo. 560
And was that time bounded so;
Wher as the flod which men Nil calleth
Departeth fro his cours and falleth
Into the See Alexandrine,
Ther takth Asie ferst seisine
Toward the West, and over this
Of Canahim wher the flod is
Into the grete See rennende,
Fro that into the worldes ende
Estward, Asie it is algates,
Til that men come unto the gates 570
Of Paradis, and there ho.
And schortly for to speke it so,
Of Orient in general
Withinne his bounde Asie hath al.
And thanne upon that other syde

541 Middelerþe (middelerþe) J, S, F myddel erþe AC B 546
Cam AJ, F Cham C, SB 552 himselue AJM 575 margin
Africa AJC, F Africa SB

De Asia.

De Africa et Eu-
ropa.[THE DIVISION OF
THE EARTH.]

Westward, as it fell thilke tyde,
The brother which was hote Cham P. iii. 104
Upon his part Aufrique nam.
Japhet Europe tho tok he,
Thus parten thei the world on thre. 580
Bot yit ther ben of londes fele
In occident as for the chele,
In orient as for the hete,
Which of the poeple be forlete
As lond desert that is unable,
For it mai noght ben habitable.
The water eke hath sondri bounde,
After the lond wher it is founde,
And takth his name of thilke londes
Wher that it renneth on the strondes: 590
Bot thilke See which hath no wane
Is cleped the gret Occeane,
Out of the which arise and come
The hyhe flodes alle and some;
Is non so litel welle spring,
Which ther ne takth his beginnyng,
And lich a man that haleth breth
Be weie of kinde, so it geth
Out of the See and in ayein,
The water, as the bokes sein. 600
Of Elementz the propretes
Hou that they stonden be degres,
As I have told, nou myht thou hier,
Mi goode Sone, al the matiere
Of Erthe, of water, Air and fyr.
And for thou saist that thi desir
Is forto witen overmore P. iii. 105
The forme of Aristotles lore,
He seith in his entendement,
That yit ther is an Element 610
Above the foure, and is the fife,
Set of the hihe goddes yifte,
The which that Orbis cleped is.

578 Vnto S . . . A 584 Which AJC, F Whiche SB 597
haleth] lakkeþ AdBTA

Nota de mari quod
magnum Oceanum
dicitur.Nota hic secundum
philosophum de quinto
Elemento, quod omnia
sub celo creata infra
suum ambitum continet,
cui nomen Orbis
specialiter appropriatum est.

[THE DIVISION OF
THE EARTH.]

And therupon he telleth this,
That as the schelle hol and sound
Encloseth al aboute round
What thing withinne an Ey belongeth,
Riht so this Orbis underfongeth
These elementz alle everychon,
Which I have spoke of on and on. 620
Bot overthis nou tak good hiede,
Mi Sone, for I wol procede
To speke upon Mathematique,
Which grounded is on Theorique.
The science of Astronomie
I thinke forto speceffe,
Withoute which, to telle plein,
Alle othre science is in vein
Toward the scole of erthli thinges :
For as an Egle with his winges 630
Fleth above alle that men finde,
So doth this science in his kinde.

[ASTRONOMY.]

iv. *Lege planetarum magis inferiora reguntur,
Ista set interdum regula fallit opus.
Vir mediante deo sapiens dominabitur astris,
Fata nec immerito quid nouitatis agunt.*

Benethe upon this Erthe hiere P. iii. 106
Of alle thinges the matiere,
As tellen ous thei that ben lerned,
Of thing above it stant governed,
That is to sein of the Planetes.
The cheles bothe and ek the hetes,
The chances of the world also,
That we fortune clepen so, 640
Among the mennes nacion
Al is thurgh constellacion,
Wherof that som man hath the wele,
And som man hath deseses fele
In love als wel as othre thinges ;

620 Which AJ, S, F Whiche B 621 good JC, SB goode A, F
628 Alle oþre AJ, S, F Alle (Al) oþer EC, B
Latin Verses iv. 4 quod Hi . . . Ba, B quis T

Hic loquitur de Ar-
tis Mathematicae quarta
specie, que Astrono-
mia nuncupata est, cui
etiam Astrologia socia
connumeratur: set
primo de septem plan-
etis, que inter astra
potenciores existunt,
incipiendo a luna scor-
sum tractare intendit.

[ASTRONOMY.]

The stat of realmes and of kinges
In time of pes, in time of werre
It is conceived of the Sterre :
And thus seith the naturien 650
Which is an Astronomien.
Bot the divin seith otherwise,
That if men weren goode and wise
And plesant unto the godhede,
Thei scholden nocht the sterres drede ;
For o man, if him wel befaller,
Is more worth than ben thei alle
Towardes him that weldeth al.
Bot yit the lawe original,
Which he hath set in the natures,
Mot worchen in the creatures, 660
That therof mai be non obstacle,
Bot if it stonde upon miracle
Thurgh preiere of som holy man. P. iii. 107
And forthi, so as I began
To speke upon Astronomie,
As it is write in the clergie,
To telle hou the planetes fare,
Som part I thenke to declare,
Mi Sone, unto thin Audience.
Astronomie is the science 670
Of wisdom and of hih connyng,
Which makth a man have knowleching
Of Sterres in the firmament,
Figure, cercle and moevement
Of ech of hem in sondri place,
And what between hem is of space,
Hou so thei moeve or stonde faste,
Al this it telleth to the laste.
Assembled with Astronomie
Is ek that ilke Astrologie, 680
The which in juggementz acompteth
Theffect, what every sterre amonteth,
And hou thei causen many a wonder
To tho climatiz that stonde hem under.

670 knoweching F 684 tho] þe JXGL, AdBTA, K (10 S)

[PLANETS AND SIGNS.]

And forto telle it more plein,
 These olde philosophres sein
 That Orbis, which I spak of err,
 Is that which we fro therthe a ferr
 Beholde, and firmament it calle,
 In which the sterres stonden alle, 690
 Among the whiche in special
 Planetes sefne principal
 Ther ben, that mannes sihte demeth, P. iii. 108
 Bot thorizonte, as to ous semeth.
 And also ther ben signes tuelve,
 Whiche have her cercles be hemselve
 Compassed in the zodiaque,
 In which thei have here places take.
 And as thei stonden in degre,
 Here cercles more or lasse be, 700
 Mad after the proporcion
 Of therthe, whos condicion
 Is set to be the foundement
 To sustiene up the firmament.
 And be this skile a man mai knowe,
 The more that thei stonden lowe,
 The more ben the cercles lasse;
 That causeth why that some passe
 Here due cours tofore an other.
 Bot nou, mi lieve dere brother, 710
 As thou desirest forto wite
 What I finde in the bokes write,
 To telle of the planetes sevene,
 Hou that thei stonde upon the hevene
 And in what point that thei ben inne,
 Tak hiede, for I wol beginne,
 So as the Philosophre tauhte
 To Alisandre and it betauhte,
 Wherof that he was fulli tawht
 Of wisdom, which was him betawht. 720
 Benethe alle othre stant the Mone,

685 Paragr. in MSS at 686 694 Bot Jorizonte FWK Be (By)
 Jorizonte SAdBTΔA But (Bot) zorizonte AMYXGERCBs Bot
 Joroughout (Jorgh out &c.) JH.L 717 it tawhte (taughte) A . . . Es

[THE PLANETS.]

The which hath with the See to done :
 Of flodes hihe and ebbes lowe P. iii. 109
 Upon his change it schal be knowe ;
 And every fissh which hath a schelle
 Mot in his governance duelle,
 To wexe and wane in his degre,
 As be the Mone a man mai se ;
 And al that stant upon the grounde
 Of his moisture it mot be founde. 730
 Alle othre sterres, as men finde,
 Be schynende of here oghne kinde
 Outake only the monelyht,
 Which is nocht of himselve bright,
 Bot as he takth it of the Sonne.
 And yit he hath nocht al fulwonne
 His lyht, that he nys somdiel derk ;
 Bot what the lette is of that werk
 In Almageste it telleth this :
 The Mones cercle so lowe is, 740
 Wherof the Sonne out of his stage
 Ne seth him nocht with full visage,
 For he is with the ground beschaded,
 So that the Mone is somdiel faded
 And may nocht fully schyne cler.
 Bot what man under his pouer
 Is bore, he schal his places change
 And seche manye londes strange :
 And as of this condicion
 The Mones disposicion 750
 Upon the lond of Alemaigne
 Is set, and ek upon Bretaigne,
 Which nou is cleped Engeland ; P. iii. 110
 For thei travaile in every lond.
 Of the Planetes the secounde
 Above the Mone hath take his bounde,
 Mercurie, and his nature is this,
 That under him who that bore is,
 In boke he schal be studios
 And in wrytinge curious, 760

Nota hic de prima
 planeta, que aliis infe-
 rior Luna dicitur.

De secunda planeta,
 que Mercurius dicitur.

704 schal beknowe SΔ, FK 736 fulwonne FK rest ful wonne

And sloth and lusties to travaile
In thing which elles myhte availe:
He loveth ese, he loveth reste,
So is he nocht the worthieste;
Bot yit with somdiel besinesse
His herte is set upon richesse.
And as in this condicion,
Theffect and disposicion
Of this Planete and of his chance
Is most in Burgoigne and in France.

770

Next to Mercurie, as wol befallē,
Stant that Planete which men calle
Venus, whos constellation
Governeth al the nacion
Of lovers, wher thei spiede or non,
Of whiche I trowe thou be on:
Bot whiderward thin happes wende,
Schal this planete schewe at ende,
As it hath do to many mo,

780

And natheles of this Planete
The moste part is softe and swete;
For who that therof takth his berthe, P. iii. 111
He schal desire joie and merthe,
Gentil, courteis and debonaire,
To speke his wordes softe and faire,
Such schal he be be weie of kinde,
And overal wher he may finde
Plesance of love, his herte boweth
With al his myht and there he woweth. 790
He is so ferforth Amourous,
He not what thing is vicious
Touchende love, for that lawe
Ther mai no maner man withdrawe,
The which venerien is bore
Be weie of kinde, and therefore
Venus of love the goddessse
Is cleped: bot of wantounesse

769 and om. AMH.XGR 798 wantounesse JC, B, F
wantounesse S wantonnesse T

[THE PLANETS.]

De tercia planeta,
que Venus dicitur.

The climat of hir lecherie
Is most commun in Lombardie.

800

Next unto this Planete of love
The brighte Sonne stant above,
Which is the hindrere of the nyht
And forthrere of the daies lyht,
As he which is the worldes ye,
Thurgh whom the lusti compaignie
Of foules be the morwe singe,
The freisshe floures sprede and springe,
The hihe tre the ground beschadeth,
And every mannes herte gladeth. 810
And for it is the hed Planete,
Hou that he sitteth in his sete,
Of what richesse, of what nobleie, P. iii. 112
These bokes telle, and thus thei seie.

Of gold glistrende Spoke and whiel
The Sonne his carte hath faire and wiel,
In which he sitt, and is coroned
With brighte stones environed;
Of whiche if that I speke schal,
Ther be tofore in special 820
Set in the front of his corone
Thre Stones, whiche no persone
Hath upon Erthe, and the ferste is
Be name cleped Licuchis;
That othre tuo be cleped thus,
Astrices and Ceramius.

In his corone also behinde,
Be olde bokes as I finde,
Ther ben of worthi Stones thre
Set ech of hem in his degre: 830
Wherof a Cristall is that on,
Which that corone is set upon;
The seconde is an Adamant;
The thridde is noble and avenant,
Which cleped is Ydriades.
And over this yit natheles
Upon the sydes of the werk,

[THE PLANETS.]

Nota de Sole, qui
medio planetarum
res:dens Astrorum
principatum obtinet.Nota de curru Solis
necnon et de vario
eiusdem apparatu.

[THE PLANETS.]

After the wrytinge of the clerk,
 Ther sitten fyve Stones mo :
 The smaragdine is on of tho, 840
 Jaspis and Elitropius
 And Dendides and Jacinctus.
 Lo, thus the corone is beset, P. iii. 113
 Wherof it schyneth wel the bet ;
 And in such wise his liht to sprede
 Sit with his Diademe on hede
 The Sonne schynende in his carte.
 And forto lede him swithe and smarte
 After the bryhte daies lawe,
 Ther ben ordeined forto drawe 850
 Foure hors his Char and him withal,
 Wherof the names telle I schal :
 Eritheüs the ferste is hote,
 The which is red and schyneth hote,
 The seconde Acteos the bryhte,
 Lampes the thridde coursier hihte,
 And Philogeüs is the ferthe,
 That bringen lyht unto this erthe,
 And gon so swift upon the hevenc,
 In foure and twenty houres evene 860
 The carte with the bryhte Sonne
 Thei drawe, so that overronne
 Thei have under the cercles hihe
 Al Middelerthe in such an hye.
 And thus the Sonne is overal
 The chief Planete imperial,
 Above him and benethe him thre :
 And thus betwen hem regneth he,
 As he that hath the middel place
 Among the Sevene, and of his face 870
 Be glade alle erthly creatures,
 And taken after the natures
 Here ese and recreacion. P. iii. 114
 And in his constellacion
 Who that is bore in special,
 Of good will and of liberal
 He schal be founde in alle place,

[THE PLANETS.]

And also stonde in mochel grace
 Toward the lordes forto serve
 And gret profit and thonk deserve. 880
 And over that it causeth yit
 A man to be soubtil of wit
 To worche in gold, and to be wys
 In every thing which is of pris.
 Bot forto speken in what cost
 Of al this erthe he regneth most
 As for wisdom, it is in Grece,
 Wher is apropred thilke spiece.
 Mars the Planete bataillous
 Next to the Sonne glorious
 Above stant, and doth mervailes
 Upon the fortune of batailes.
 The conquerours be daies olde
 Were unto this planete holde :
 Bot who that his nativite
 Hath take upon the proprete
 Of Martes disposicioun
 Be weie of cõstellacioun,
 He schal be fiers and folhastif
 And desirous of werre and strif. 900
 Bot forto telle redely
 In what climat most comunly
 That this planete hath his effect, P. iii. 115
 Seid is that he hath his aspect
 Upon the holi lond so cast,
 That there is no pes stedefast.
 Above Mars upon the hevenc,
 The sexte Planete of the sevene,
 Stant Jupiter the delicat,
 Which causeth pes and no debat. 910
 For he is cleped that Planete
 Which of his kinde softe and swete
 Attempreth al that to him longeth ;
 And whom this planete underfongeth
 To stonde upon his regiment,
 He schal be meke and pacient

911 that] ye AMH.G, AdBT, W

Nota de quinta
 planeta, que Mars
 dicitur.

Nota de sexta pla-
 neta, que Iupiter di-
 citur.

[THE PLANETS.]

And fortunat to Marchandie
 And lusti to delicacie
 In every thing which he schal do.
 This Jupiter is cause also
 Of the science of lyhte werkes,
 And in this wise tellen clerkes
 He is the Planete of delices.
 Bot in Egipte of his offices
 He regneth most in special:
 For ther be lustes overal
 Of al that to this lif befallerh;
 For ther no stormy weder falleth,
 Which myhte grieve man or beste,
 And ek the lond is so honeste
 That it is plentevous and plein,
 Ther is non ydel ground in vein;
 And upon such felicitye
 Stant Jupiter in his degre.

920

930

P. iii. 116

940

950

The heyeste and aboven alle
 Stant that planete which men calle
 Saturnus, whos complexion
 Is cold, and his condicion
 Causeth malice and crualte
 To him the whos nativite
 Is set under his governance.
 For alle hise werkes ben grevance
 And enemy to mannes hele,
 In what degre that he schal dele.
 His climat is in Orient,
 Wher that he is most violent.
 Of the Planetes by and by,
 Hou that thei stonde upon the Sky,
 Fro point to point as thou myht hiere,
 Was Alisandre mad to liere.
 Bot overthis touchende his lore,
 Of thing that thei him tawhte more
 Upon the scoles of clergie
 Now herkne the Philosophie.

933 vpon] whan AM 935 f. margin De septima—dictus est
 om. B 936 je AM . . . B₁, AdΔ

[THE SIGNS.]

Postquam dictum
 est de vii. Planetis,
 quibus singuli septi-
 mane dies singulariter
 attuluntur, dicendum
 est iam de xii. Signis,
 per que xii. Menses
 Annuarii temporibus
 effectus varios asse-
 quuntur.

P. iii. 117

970

He which departeth dai fro nyht,
 That on derk and that other lyht,
 Of sevene daies made a weke,
 A Monthe of foure wekes eke
 He hath ordeigned in his lawe,
 Of Monthes twelve and ek forthdrawe
 He hath also the longe yeer.
 And as he sette of his pouer
 Acordant to the daies sevene
 Planetes Sevene upon the hevene,
 As thou tofore hast herd devise,
 To speke riht in such a wise,
 To every Monthe be himselve
 Upon the hevene of Signes twelve
 He hath after his Ordinal
 Assigned on in special,
 Wherof, so as I schal rehersen,
 The tydes of the yer diversen.
 Bot pleinly forto make it knowe
 Hou that the Signes sitte arowe,
 Ech after other be degre
 In substance and in proprete
 The zodiaque comprehendeth
 Withinne his cerce, as it appendeth.

The ferste of whiche natheles
 Be name is cleped Aries,
 Which lich a wether of stature
 Resembled is in his figure.
 And as it seith in Almageste,
 Of Sterres twelve upon this beste
 Ben set, wherof in his degre
 The wombe hath tuo, the heved hath thre,
 The Tail hath sevene, and in this wise,
 As thou myht hiere me devise,
 Stant Aries, which hot and drye
 Is of himself, and in partie

990

Nota hic de primo
 Signo, quod Aries
 dicitur, cui Mensis
 Martii specialiter ap-
 propriatus est.
 Quo deus in primo
 produxit adesse creata.

956 bryht (bright) S . . . Δ 962 margin assequitur H₁E . . . B₁
 asseruntur X 978 as it] and it E, AdBT it XL 979-982 Four
 lines om. B 983 margin adesso H₁XGEGR, SBΔ, W (Lat. om.
 JM, AdT) 984 je beste AM . . . B₁ his brest W

[THE SIGNS.]

He is the receipte and the hous
Of myhty Mars the bataillous.
And overmore ek, as I finde,
The creatour of alle kinde
Upon this Signe first began
The world, whan that he made man.
And of this constellacioun
The verray operacioun
Availleth, if a man therinne
The pourpos of his werk beginne ;
For thanne he hath of proprete
Good sped and gret felicite.

The twelve Monthes of the yeer
Attitled under the pouer
Of these twelve Signes stonde ;
Wherof that thou schalt understonde
This Aries on of the twelve
Hath March attitled for himselfe,
Whan every bridd schal chese his make,
And every neddre and every Snake
And every Reptil which mai moeve,
His myht assaieth forto proeve,
To crepen out ayein the Sonne,
Whan Ver his Seson hath begonne.

Taurus the seconde after this
Of Signes, which figured is
Unto a Bole, is dreie and cold ;
And as it is in bokes told,
He is the hous appourtientant
To Venus, somdiel discordant.
This Bole is ek with sterres set,
Thurgh whiche he hath hise hornes knet
Unto the tail of Aries,
So is he nocht ther sterreles.
Upon his brest ek eyhtetiene
He hath, and ek, as it is sene,
Upon his tail stonde othre tuo.

1007 out of AdBT and of W 1017 is om. AdBT
hous of AM 1027 tuo] moo (mo) AM . . . B.

1019

[THE SIGNS.]

His Monthe assigned ek also
Is Averil, which of his schoures
Ministreth weie unto the floures.

The thridde signe is Gemini,
Which is figured redely
Lich to tuo twinnes of mankinde,
That naked stonde ; and as I finde,
Thei be with Sterres wel bego :
The heved hath part of thilke tuo
That schyne upon the boles tail,
So be thei bothe of o parail ;
But on the wombe of Gemini
Ben fyve sterres nocht forthi,
And ek upon the feet be tweie,
So as these olde bokes seie,
That wise Tholomeüs wrot.
His propre Monthe wel I wot
Assigned is the lusti Maii,
Whanne every brid upon his lay
Among the griene leves singeth,
And love of his pointure stingeth
After the lawes of nature
The youthe of every creature.

Cancer after the reule and space
Of Signes halt the ferthe place.
Like to the crabbe he hath semblance,
And hath unto his retienance
Sextiene sterres, wherof ten,
So as these olde wise men
Describe, he berth on him tofore,
And in the middel tuo be bore,
And foure he hath upon his ende.
Thus goth he sterred in his kende,
And of himself is moiste and cold,
And is the propre hous and hold
Which appartieneth to the Mone,

1033 of o kynde H₁ERCB₂ of kynde XL 1044 Hise F
1058 be bore] bifore (before) AdBT

Tercium Signum
dicitur Gemini, cuius
Mensis Malius est.
Quo volucrum can-
tus gaudet de floribus
ortis.

Quartum Signum
Cancer dicitur, cuius
Mensis Iunius est.
Quo falcat pratis
pabula tonsor equis.

[THE SIGNS.]

And doth what longeth him to done.
The Monthe of Juin unto this Signe
Thou schalt after the reule assigne.

The fife Signe is Leo hote,
Whos kinde is schape dreie and hote,
In whom the Sonne hath herbergage.
And the semblance of his ymage
Is a leoun, which in baillie
Of sterres hath his pourpartie:
The foure, which as Cancer hath
Upon his ende, Leo tath
Upon his heved, and thanne nest
He hath ek foure upon his brest,
And on upon his tail behinde,
In olde bokes as we finde.
His propre Monthe is Juyl be name,
In which men pleien many a game.

1070

P. iii. 121

1080

After Leo Virgo the nexte
Of Signes cleped is the sexte,
Wherof the figure is a Maide;
And as the Philosophre saide,
Sche is the welthe and the risinge,
The lust, the joie and the likinge
Unto Mercurie: and soth to seie
Sche is with sterres wel beseie,
Wherof Leo hath lent hire on,
Which sit on hih hir heved upon,
Hire wombe hath fyve, hir feet also
Have other fyve: and overmo
Touchende as of complexion,
Be kindly disposicion
Of dreie and cold this Maiden is.
And forto tellen over this
Hir Monthe, thou schalt understonde,
Whan every feld hath corn in honde
And many a man his bak hath plied,

1090

1079 Monthe om. B 1095 cold om. AdBT 1100 Augst
applied T, F August applied A . . . Bs (except E), SAdΔ, WK
August plyed E, B

Quintum signum
Leo dicitur, cuius Men-
sis Iulius est.
Quo magis ad terras
expandit Lucifer ignes.

Sextum Signum
Virgo dicitur, cuius
Mensis Augustus est.
Quo vacuata prius
pubes replet horrea
messis.

Unto this Signe is Augst applied.

1100 [THE SIGNS.]

After Virgo to reknen evene
Libra sit in the nombre of sevene,
Which hath figure and resemblance
Unto a man which a balance
Berth in his hond as forto weie:
In boke and as it mai be seie,
Diverse sterres to him longeth,
Wherof on hevede he underfongeth
Ferst thre, and ek his wombe hath tuo,
And doun benethe eighte othre mo.
This Signe is hot and moiste bothe,
The whiche thinges be nocht lothe
Unto Venus, so that alofte
Sche resteth in his hous fulofte,
And ek Saturnus often hyed
Is in this Signe and magnified.
His propre Monthe is seid Septembre,
Which yifth men cause to remembre,
If eny Sor be left behinde
Of thing which grieve mai to kinde.

P. iii. 122

1110

1120

Among the Signes upon heighte
The Signe which is nombred eighte
Is Scorpio, which as feloun
Figured is a Scorpioun.
Bot for al that yit natheles
Is Scorpio nocht sterreles;
For Libra granteth him his ende
Of eighte sterres, wher he wende,
The whiche upon his heved assised
He berth, and ek ther ben divided
Upon his wombe sterres thre,
And eighte upon his tail hath he.
Which of his kinde is moiste and cold
And unbehovely manyfold;
He harmeth Venus and empeireth,
Bot Mars unto his hous repeireth,
Bot war whan thei togedre duellen.

1130
P. iii. 123

Septimum Signum
Libra dicitur, cuius
Mensis Septembris est.
Vinea quo Bachum
pressa liquore colit.

Octauum Signum
Scorpio dicitur, cuius
Mensis October est.
Floribus exclusis ye-
mis qui ianitor extat.

1116 this] je AMH.XGRLB:

[THE SIGNS.]

Nonum signum Sagittarius dicitur, cuius Mensis Nouember est. Quo mustum bibulo linquit sua nomina vino.

CONFESSIO AMANTIS

His propre Monthe is, as men tellen,
Octobre, which bringth the kalende
Of wynter, that comth next suiende. 1140

The nynthe Signe in nombre also,
Which folweth after Scorpio,
Is cleped Sagittarius,
The whos figure is marked thus,
A Monstre with a bowe on honde:
On whom that sondri sterres stonde,
Thilke eighte of whiche I spak tofore,
The whiche upon the tail ben bore
Of Scorpio, the heved al faire
Bespreden of the Sagittaire; 1150

And eighte of othre stonden evene
Upon his wombe, and othre sevene
Ther stonde upon his tail behinde.
And he is hot and dreie of kinde:
To Jupiter his hous is fre,
Bot to Mercurie in his degre,
For thei ben nocht of on assent,
He worcheth gret empeirement.
This Signe hath of his proprete P. iii. 124
A Monthe, which of duete 1160

After the sesoun that befalleth
The Plowed Oxe in wynter stalleth;
And fyr into the halle he bringeth,
And thilke drinke of which men singeth,
He torneth must into the wyn;
Thanne is the larder of the swyn;
That is Novembre which I meene,
Whan that the lef hath lost his greene.

Decimum Signum Capricornus dicitur, cuius Mensis Decem-ber est.

Ipse diem Nano noctemque Gigante figurat.

The tenthe Signe dreie and cold,
The which is Capricornus told, 1170
Unto a Got hath resemblance:
For whos love and whos aqeintance
Withinne hise houses to sojorne
It liketh wel unto Satorne,
Bot to the Mone it liketh nocht,

1148 To... bore AMX... L To... lore Bz 1163 he] it A... Bz

LIBER SEPTIMUS

[THE SIGNS.]

For no profit is there wrought.
This Signe as of his proprete
Upon his heved hath sterres thre,
And ek upon his wombe tuo,
And tweie upon his tail also. 1180
Decembre after the yeeres forme,
So as the bokes ous enforme,
With daies schorte and nyhtes longe
This ilke Signe hath underfonge.

Of tho that sitte upon the hevene
Of Signes in the nombre ellevene
Aquarius hath take his place, P. iii. 125
And stant wel in Satornes grace,
Which duelleth in his herbergage,
Bot to the Sonne he doth outrage. 1190
This Signe is verrailly resembled
Lich to a man which halt assembled
In eyther hand a water spoute,
Wherof the stremes rennen oute.
He is of kinde moiste and hot,
And he that of the sterres wot
Seith that he hath of sterres tuo
Upon his heved, and ben of tho

That Capricorn hath on his ende;
And as the bokes maken mende, 1200
That Tholomeüs made himselve,
He hath ek on his wombe tuelve,
And tweie upon his ende stonde.
Thou schalt also this understonde,
The frosti colde Janever,
Whan comen is the newe yeer,
That Janus with his double face
In his chaire hath take his place
And loketh upon bothe sides,
Somdiel toward the wynter tydes, 1210
Somdiel toward the yeer suiende,
That is the Monthe belongende
Unto this Signe, and of his dole

Vndecimum Signum Aquarius dicitur, cuius Mensis Ianuarius est. Quo Ianus vultum duplum conuertit in annum.

1181 f. formes... enformes AdBT

[THE SIGNS.]

Duodecimum Signum Piscis dicitur, cuius Mensis Februarius est.

Quo pluuie torrens riparum concitat ampnes.

He yifth the ferste Primerole.

The tuelfthe, which is last of alle P. iii. 126
Of Signes, Piscis men it calle,

The which, as telleth the scripture,
Berth of tuo fisshes the figure.

So is he cold and moiste of kinde,

And ek with sterres, as I finde, 1220

Beset in sondri wise, as thus:

Tuo of his ende Aquarius

Hath lent unto his heved, and tuo

This Signe hath of his oghne also

Upon his wombe, and over this

Upon his ende also ther is

A nombre of twenty sterres bryghte,

Which is to sen a wonder sighte.

Toward this Signe into his hous

Comth Jupiter the glorious, 1230

And Venus ek with him acordeth

To dueÿen, as the bok recordeth.

The Monthe unto this Signe ordeined

Is Februer, which is bereined,

And with londflodes in his rage

At Fordes letteth the passage.

Nou hast thou herd the proprete

Of Signes, bot in his degre

Albumazar yit over this

Seith, so as therthe parted is 1240

In foure, riht so ben diuised

The Signes tuelve and stonde assised,

That ech of hem for his partie

Hath his climat to justefie.

Wherof the ferste regiment P. iii. 127

Toward the part of Orient

From Antioche and that contre

Governed is of Signes thre,

That is Cancer, Virgo, Leo:

And toward Occident also 1250

From Armenie, as I am lerned,

1223 unto] and to B 1229 his signe AdBT

[THE SIGNS.]

Of Capricorn it stant governed,

Of Pisces and Aquarius:

And after hem I finde thus,

Southward from Alisandre forth

Tho Signes whiche most ben worth

In governance of that doaire,

Libra thei ben and Sagittaire

With Scorpio, which is conjoint

With hem to stonde upon that point: 1260

Constantinople the Cite,

So as the bokes tellen me,

The laste of this division

Stant untoward Septemtrion,

Wher as be weie of pourveance

Hath Aries the governance

Forth with Taurus and Gemini.

Thus ben the Signes propreli

Divided, as it is reherced,

Wherof the londes ben diuersed. 1270

Lo thus, mi Sone, as thou myht hiere,

Was Alisandre mad to liere

Of hem that weren for his lore.

But nou to loken overmore,

Of othre sterres hou thei fare P. iii. 128

I thenke hierafter to declare,

So as king Alisandre in youthe

Of him that suche thinges couthe

Enformed was tofore his yhe

Be nyhte upon the sterres hihe. 1280

Upon sondri creacion

[THE FIFTEEN STARS.]

Stant sondri operacion,

Som worcheth this, som worcheth that;

The fyr is hot in his astat

And brenneth what he mai atteigne,

The water mai the fyr restreigne,

The which is cold and moist also.

Of other thing it farh riht so

1260 þe point AM . . . B; 1261 Constantyn noble þe cite
H; XERCL Constantyne þe noble cite B; 1266 Aries hā] H; . . . B;
1280 hihe] sibe (seye) BT 1287 moist AJ, S, F moiste B

Hic tractat super doctrina Nectanabi, dum ipse iuuenem Alexandrum instruxit, de illis precipue xv. stellis vna cum earum lapidibus et herbis, que ad artis magicę

[THE FIFTEEN STARS.]
naturalis operacionem
specialius conueniunt.

Upon this erthe among ous here ;
And forto speke in this manere, 1290
Upon the hevене, as men mai finde,
The sterres ben of sondri kinde
And worchen manye sondri thinges
To ous, that ben here underlinges.
Among the whiche forth withal
Nectanabus in special,
Which was an Astronomien
And ek a gret Magicien,
And undertake hath thilke emprise
To Alisandre in his aprise 1300
As of Magique naturel
To knowe, enformeth him somdel
Of certein sterres what thei mene ;
Of whiche, he seith, ther ben fiftene,
And sondrily to everich on P. iii. 129
A gras belongeth and a Ston,
Wherof men worchen many a wonder
To sette thing bothe up and under.

To telle riht as he began,
The ferste sterre Aldeboran, 1310
The cliereste and the moste of alle,
Be rihte name men it calle ;
Which lich is of condicion
To Mars, and of complexion
To Venus, and hath therupon
Carbunculum his propre Ston :
His herbe is Anabulla named,
Which is of gret vertu proclamed.

The seconde is noght vertules ;
Clota or elles Pliades 1320
It hatte, and of the mones kinde
He is, and also this I finde,
He takth of Mars complexion :
And lich to such condicion
His Ston appropred is Cristall,
And ek his herbe in special
The vertuous Fenele it is.

1321 Is hette AM it hatteth A monjes BT mannes W

Prima stella vocatur
Aldeboran, cuius
lapis Carbunculus et
herba Anabulla est.

Secunda stella vocatur
Clota seu Pliades,
cuius lapis
Cristallum et herba
Feniculus est.

The thridde, which comth after this,
Is hote Algol the clere rede,
Which of Satorne, as I may rede,
His kinde takth, and ek of Jove
Complexion to his behove.
His propre Ston is Dyamant,
Which is to him most acordant ;
His herbe, which is him betake, P. iii. 130
Is hote Eleborum the blake.

So as it falleth upon lot,
The ferthe sterre is Alhaiot,
Which in the wise as I seide er
Of Satorne and of Jupiter 1340
Hath take his kinde ; and therupon
The Saphir is his propre Ston,
Marrubium his herbe also,
The whiche acorden bothe tuo.

And Canis maior in his like
The fife sterre is of Magique,
The whos kinde is venerien,
As seith this Astronomien.
His propre Ston is seid Berille,
Bot forto worche and to fulfile 1350
Thing which to this science falleth,
Ther is an herbe which men calleth
Saveine, and that behoveth nede
To him that wole his pourpos spede.

The sexte suiende after this
Be name Canis minor is ;
The which sterre is Mercurial
Be weie of kinde, and forth withal,
As it is writen in the carte,
Complexion he takth of Marte. 1360
His Ston and herbe, as seith the Scole,
Ben Achates and Primerole.

The sefnthe sterre in special
Of this science is Arial,
Which sondri nature underfongeth. P. iii. 131

1346 margin Berillis A . . . B, W 1361 as je scole (om. seith)
AMH.XRLB₂ after jis scole E (as nei) je scole JGC

[THE FIFTEEN STARS.]
Tercia stella vocatur
Algol, cuius lapis
Dyamans et herba
Eleborum nigrum est.

Quarta stella vocatur
Alhaiot, cuius
lapis Saphirus et herba
Marrubium est.

Quinta stella vocatur
Canis maior, cuius
lapis Berillus et herba
Savina est.

Sexta stella vocatur
Canis minor, cuius
lapis Achates et herba
Primula est.

Septima stella vocatur
Arial, cuius lapis
Gorgonza et herba
Celidonia est.

[THE FIFTEEN STARS.]

Octava stella vocatur Ala Corui, cuius lapis Honochinus et herba Lapacia est.

Nona stella vocatur Alaezel, cuius lapis Smaragdus et herba Salgea est.

Decima stella vocatur Almareth, cuius lapis Iaspis et herba Plantago est.

Vndecima stella vocatur Venenas, cuius lapis Adamans et herba Cicorea est.

Duodecima stella vocatur Alpheta, cuius

The Ston which propre unto him longeth,
Gorgonza proprely it hihte:
His herbe also, which he schal rihte
Upon the worchinge as I mene,
Is Celidoine freissh and grene.

1370

Sterre Ala Corvi upon heihte
Hath take his place in nombre of eighte,
Which of his kinde mot parforne
The will of Marte and of Satorne:
To whom Lapacia the grete
Is herbe, bot of no beyete;
His Ston is Honochinus hote,
Thurgh which men worchen gret riote.

The nynthe sterre faire and wel
Be name is hote Alaezel,
Which takth his propre kinde thus
Bothe of Mercurie and of Venus.
His Ston is the grene Amyraude,
To whom is yoven many a laude:
Salge is his herbe appourtenant
Aboven al the remenant.

1380

The tenthe sterre is Almareth,
Which upon lif and upon deth
Thurgh kinde of Jupiter and Mart
He doth what longeth to his part.
His Ston is Jaspe, and of Planteine
He hath his herbe soveraine.

1390

The sterre ellefthe is Venenas,
The whos nature is as it was
Take of Venus and of the Mone,
In thing which he hath forto done.
Of Adamant is that perrie
In which he worcheth his maistrie;
Thilke herbe also which him befalleth,
Cicorea the bok it calleth.

P. iii. 132

1400

Alpheta in the nombre sit,
And is the twelfthe sterre yit;

1372 *margin* Honochinus om. AM 1383 grene] grete
B, W 1393 ellef þe JC, S, F elleþe A elleueþe B 1400 him
calleþ R, AdBT

[THE FIFTEEN STARS.]
lapis Topazion et herba Rosa marina est.

Of Scorpio which is governed,
And takth his kinde, as I am lerned;
And hath his vertu in the Ston
Which cleped is Topazion:
His herbe propre is Rosmarine,
Which schapen is for his covine.

Of these sterres, whiche I mene,
Cor Scorpionis is thritiene;
The whos nature Mart and Jove
Have yoven unto his behove.
His herbe is Aristologie,
Which folweth his Astronomie:
The Ston which that this sterre alloweth,
Is Sardis, which unto him boweth.

1410

The sterre which stant next the laste,
Nature on him this name caste
And clepeth him Botercadent;
Which of his kinde obedient
Is to Mercurie and to Venus.
His Ston is seid Crisolitus,
His herbe is cleped Satureie,
So as these olde bokes seie.

1420

Bot nou the laste sterre of alle
The tail of Scorpio men calle,
Which to Mercurie and to Satorne
Be weie of kinde mot retorne
After the preparacion
Of due constellacion.

P. iii. 133

1430

The Calcedoine unto him longeth,
Which for his Ston he underfongeth;
Of Majorane his herbe is grounded.
Thus have I seid hou thei be founded,
Of every sterre in special,
Which hath his herbe and Ston withal,
As Hermes in his bokes olde
Witnessse berth of that I tolde.

1404 *margin* Topazion H₁ . . . B₁ 1406 Topazion (topaxione)
H₁ . . . CB₁ to paxione L 1412 *margin* Astrologia
astrologia) A . . . B₁, BA, H₁ 1413 Astrologie (astrologie)
MH, E, BA, H₁

Terciadecima stella vocatur Cor Scorpionis, cuius lapis Sardis et herba Aristologia est.

Quartadecima stella vocatur Botercadent, cuius lapis Crisolitus et herba Satureia est.

Quintadecima stella vocatur Cauda Scorpionis, cuius lapis Calcedonia et herba Majorana est.

[AUTHORS OF THE
SCIENCE OF ASTRO-
NOMY.]

Nota hic de Aucto-
ribus illis, qui ad As-
tronomie scienciam
pre ceteris studiosius
intendentes libros
super hoc distinctis
nominibus composue-
runt.

The science of Astronomie,
Which principal is of clergie 1440
To dieme betwen wo and wel
In thinges that be naturel,
Thei hadde a gret travail on honde
That made it ferst ben understonde;
And thei also whiche overmore
Here studie sette upon this lore,
Thei weren gracious and wys
And worthi forto bere a pris.
And whom it liketh forto wite 1450
Of hem that this science write,
On of the ferste which it wrot
After Noë, it was Nembrot,
To his disciple Ychonithon
And made a bok forth therupon
The which Megaster cleped was. P. iii. 134
An other Auctor in this cas
Is Arachel, the which men note;
His bok is Abbategnyh hote.
Danz Tholome is nocht the leste,
Which makth the bok of Almageste; 1460
And Alfraganus doth the same,
Whos bok is Chatemuz be name.
Gebuz and Alpetragus eke
Of Planisperie, which men seke,
The bokes made: and over this
Ful many a worthi clerc ther is,
That writen upon this clergie
The bokes of Altemetrie,
Planemetrie and ek also,
Whiche as belongen bothe tuo, 1470
So as thei ben naturiens,
Unto these Astronomiens.
Men sein that Habraham was on;
Bot whether that he wrot or non,
That finde I nocht; and Moïses
Ek was an other: bot Hermes

1445 which AJ, S, F whiche B 1464 palmestrie H₁ . . . B₁
1473 Habraham JX, F rest Abraham

[AUTHORS OF THE
SCIENCE OF ASTRO-
NOMY.]

Above alle othre in this science
He hadde a gret experience;
Thurgh him was many a sterre assised, 1480
Whos bokes yit ben auctorized.
I mai nocht knowen alle tho
That writen in the time tho
Of this science; bot I finde,
Of jugement be weie of kinde
That in o point thei alle acorden: P. iii. 135
Of sterres whiche thei recorden
That men mai sen upon the hevене,
Ther ben a thousand sterres evene
And tuo and twenty, to the syhte
Whiche aren of himself so bryhte, 1490
That men mai dieme what thei be,
The nature and the proprete.
Nou hast thou herd, in which a wise
These noble Philosophres wise
Enformeden this yonge king,
And made him have a knowleching
Of thing which ferst to the partie
Belongeth of Philosophie,
Which Theorique cleped is,
As thou tofore hast herd er this. 1500
Bot nou to speke of the secounde,
Which Aristotle hath also founde,
And techeth hou to speke faire,
Which is a thing full necessaire
To contrepise the balance,
Wher lacketh other sufficance.

v. *Compositi pulcra sermonis verba placere
Principio poterunt, veraque fine placent.
Herba, lapis, sermo, tria sunt virtute repleta,
Vis tamen ex verbi pondere plura facit.*

[ii. RHETORIC.]

Above alle erthli creatures
The hihe makere of natures

1477 this] his AdBT 1490 aren] been (ben) A . . . B₁, W
1493 such a wise MH:CL, T, H₁
Latin Verses v. 1 sermones H₁ . . . B₁, B 4 pulcra AdBT

* *

T

[RHETORIC.]

Hic tractat de secunda parte Philosophic, cuius nomen Rethorica facundos efficit. Loquitur etiam de eiusdem duabus speciebus, scilicet Grammatica et Logica, quarum doctrina Rethor sua verba perornat.

The word to man hath yove alone,
 So that the speche of his persone, 1510
 Or forto lese or forto winne, P. iii. 136
 The, hertes thoght which is withinne
 Mai schewe, what it wolde mene;
 And that is noghwhere elles sene
 Of kinde with non other beste.
 So scholde he be the more honeste,
 To whom god yaf so gret a yifte,
 And loke wel that he ne schifte
 Hise wordes to no wicked us;
 For word the techer of vertus 1520
 Is cleped in Philosophie.
 Wherof touchende this partie,
 Is Rethorique the science
 Appropred to the reverence
 Of wordes that ben resonable:
 And for this art schal be vailable
 With goodli wordes forto like,
 It hath Gramaire, it hath Logique,
 That serven bothe unto the speche.
 Gramaire ferste hath forto teche 1530
 To speke upon congruite:
 Logique hath eke in his degre
 Between the trouthe and the falshode
 The pleine wordes forto schode,
 So that nothing schal go beside,
 That he the riht ne schal decide,
 Wherof full many a gret debat
 Reformed is to good astat,
 And pes sustiened up alofte
 With esy wordes and with softe, 1540
 Wher strengthe scholde lete it falle. P. iii. 137
 The Philosophre amonges alle
 Forthi commendeth this science,
 Which hath the reule of eloquence.
 In Ston and gras vertu ther is,
 Bot yit the bokes tellen this,

1530 ferste A, S, F ferst (first) JC, B 1545 in gras
 H. CLB, W

[RHETORIC.]

That word above alle erthli thinges
 Is vertuou in his doinges,
 Wher so it be to evele or goode.
 For if the wordes semen goode 1550
 And ben wel spoke at mannes Ere,
 Whan that ther is no trouthe there,
 Thei don fulofte gret deceipte;
 For whan the word to the conceipte
 Descordeth in so double a wise,
 Such Rethorique is to despise
 In every place, and forto drede.
 For of Uluxes thus I rede,
 As in the bok of Troie is founde,
 His eloquence and his facounde 1560
 Of goodly wordes whiche he tolde,
 Hath mad that Anthenor him solde
 The toun, which he with tresoun wan.
 Word hath beguiled many a man;
 With word the wilde beste is daunted,
 With word the Serpent is enchaunted,
 Of word among the men of Armes
 Ben woundes heeled with the charmes,
 Wher lacketh other medicine;
 Word hath under his discipline 1570
 Of Sorcerie the karectes. P. iii. 138
 The wordes ben of sondri sectes,
 Of evele and eke of goode also;
 The wordes maken frend of fo,
 And fo of frend, and pes of werre,
 And werre of pes, and out of herre
 The word this wordes cause entrieth,
 And reconsileth whan him liketh.
 The word under the coupe of hevене
 Set every thing or odde or evene; 1580
 With word the hihe god is plesed,
 With word the wordes ben appesed,
 The softe word the loude stilleth;
 Wher lacketh good, the word fulfilleth,
 To make amendes for the wrong;

1574 and fo A . . . Bz, AdT 1577 þe worldes A . . . Bz, Bz

[RHETORIC.]

Whan wordes medlen with the song,
It doth plesance wel the more.

Bot forto loke upon the lore

Hou Tullius his Rethorique

Componeth, ther a man mai pike

Hou that he schal hise wordes sette,

Hou he schal lose, hou he schal knette,

And in what wise he schal pronounce

His tale plein withoute frounce.

Wherof ensample if thou wolt seche,

Tak hiede and red whilom the speche

Of Julius and Cithero,

Which consul was of Rome tho,

Of Catoun eke and of Cillene,

Behold the wordes hem betwene,

Whan the tresoun of Cateline

Descovered was, and the covine

Of hem that were of his assent

Was knowe and spoke in parlement,

And axed hou and in what wise

Men scholde don hem to juise.

Cillenus ferst his tale tolde,

To trouthe and as he was beholde,

The comun profit forto save,

He seide hou tresoun scholde have

A cruel deth; and thus thei spieke,

The Consul bothe and Catoun eke,

And seiden that for such a wrong

Ther mai no peine be to strong.

Bot Julius with wordes wise

His tale tolde al otherwise,

As he which wolde her deth respite,

And fondeth hou he mihte excite

The jugges thurgh his eloquence

Fro deth to torne the sentence

And sette here hertes to pite.

Nou tolden thei, nou tolde he;

1590

1600
P. iii. 139

1610

1620

1588 his lore A . . . Bz
(Taak) AC, SB Take J, F
meu A me M 1619 iugge AdBT

1589 his]]e AdBT
1597 and of AMR

1596 Tak
1618 he]

[RHETORIC.]

Thei spieken plein after the lawe,

Bot he the wordes of his sawe

Coloureth in an other weie

Spekende, and thus betwen the tweie,

To trete upon this juggement,

Made ech of hem his Argument.

Wherof the tales forto hierie,

Ther mai a man the Scole liere

Of Rethoriques eloquences,

Which is the secoude of sciences

Touchende to Philosophie;

Wherof a man schal justifie

Hise wordes in disputeisoun,

And knette upon conclusioun

His Argument in such a forme,

Which mai the pleine trouthe enforme

And the soubtil cautele abate,

Which every trewman schal debate.

1630

P. iii. 140

1640

vi. *Practica quemque statum pars tertia Philosophie**Ad regimen recte ducit in orbe vie:**Set quanto maior Rex est, tanto magis ipsum**Hec scola concernit, qua sua regna regat.*

[iii. PRACTIC.]

The ferste, which is Theorique,

And the secoude Rethorique,

Sciences of Philosophie,

I have hem told as in partie,

So as the Philosophre it tolde

To Alisandre: and nou I wolde

Telle of the thridde what it is,

The which Practique cleped is.

Practique stant upon thre thinges

Toward the governance of kinges;

Wherof the ferst Etique is named,

The whos science stant proclaimed

To teche of vertu thilke reule,

1650

1640 trewman AC, S, F trewe man B
Latin Verses vi. 4 Hec FKH:Magd Ex A . . . Bz, S . . . ΔA, W
regit BTA gerit Ad
1651 ferst AJ, S, F ferste (ferste) C, B

Hic tractat de tertia parte Philosophie, que Practica vocatur, cuius species sunt tres, scilicet Etica, Ichonomia et Policia, quarum doctrina regia magestas in suo regimine ad honoris magnificentiam per singula dirigitur.

[PRACTIC.]

Hou that a king himself schal reule
 Of his moral condicion
 With worthi disposicion
 Of good livinge in his persone, P. iii. 141
 Which is the chief of his corone.
 It makth a king also to lerne 1660
 Hou he his bodi schal governe,
 Hou he schal wake, hou he schal slepe,
 Hou that he schal his hele kepe
 In mete, in drinke, in clothinge eke:
 Ther is no wisdom forto seke
 As for the reule of his persone,
 The which that this sciēce al one
 Ne techeth as be weie of kinde,
 That ther is nothing left behinde.
 That other point which to Practique
 Belongeth is Iconomique, 1670
 Which techeth thilke honestete
 Thurgh which a king in his degre
 His wif and child schal reule and guie,
 So forth with al the companie
 Which in his houshold schal abyde,
 And his astat on every syde
 In such manere forto lede,
 That he his houshold ne mislede.
 Practique hath yit the thridde aprise,
 Which techeth hou and in what wise 1680
 Thurgh hih pourveied ordinance
 A king schal sette in governance
 His Realme, and that is Policie,
 Which longeth unto Regalie
 In time of werre, in time of pes,
 To worschipe and to good encress
 Of clerk, of kniht and of Marchant, P. iii. 142
 And so forth of the remenant
 Of al the comun poeple aboute,
 Withinne Burgh and ek withoute, 1690

1666 that om. AM . . . Bz 1670 Belongeth to Icon. AM . . . Bz
 1671 honeste M . . . Bz (except C), SA, WHz 1681 hih] his B
 1688 of] al AdBT 1690 cek C, B eke (eeke) A, F

[PRACTIC.]

Of hem that ben Artificiers,
 Whiche usen craftes and mestiers,
 Whos Art is cleped Mechanique.
 And though thei ben nocht alle like,
 Yit natheles, hou so it falle,
 O lawe mot governe hem alle,
 Or that thei lese or that thei winne,
 After thastat that thei ben inne.

Lo, thus this worthi yonge king
 Was fulli tauht of every thing, 1700
 Which mihte yive entendement
 Of good reule and good regiment
 To such a worthi Prince as he.
 Bot of verray necessite
 The Philosophre him hath betake
 Fyf pointz, whiche he hath undertake
 To kepe and holde in observance,
 As for the worthi governance
 Which longeth to his Regalie,
 After the reule of Policie. 1710

[FIVE POINTS OF
POLICY.]

vii. *Moribus ornatus regit hic qui regna moderna,
 Cercius expectat ceptra futura poli.
 Et quia veridica virtus supereminet omnes,
 Regis ab ore boni fabula nulla sonat.*

[THE FIRST POINT OF
POLICY. TRUTH.]

To every man behoveth lore,
 Bot to noman belongeth more
 Than to a king, which hath to lede P. iii. 143
 The poeple; for of his kinghede
 He mai hem bothe save and spille.
 And for it stant upon his wille,
 It sit him wel to ben advised,
 And the vertus whiche are assised
 Unto a kinges Regiment,
 To take in his entendement:
 Wherof to tellen, as thei stonde,
 Hierafterward nou woll I fonde.

Hic secundum Poli-
 ciam tractare intendit
 precipue super quin-
 que regularum Articulis,
 que ad Principis
 Regimen observande
 specialius existunt,
 quarum prima veritas
 nuncupatur. Perquam
 veridicus fit sermo
 Regis ad omnes.

1695 hou om. AM 1698 þe staat (state) AMBz, W þe estate R
 1711 behoveth] bilongeþ X, AdBT 1718 are] been (ben) A . . .
 B: margin existat AM . . . Bz

[TRUTH.]

Among the vertus on is chief,
 And that is trouthe, which is lief
 To god and ek to man also.
 And for it hath ben evere so,
 Tawhte Aristotle, as he wel couthe,
 To Alisandre, hou in his youthe
 He scholde of trouthe thilke grace
 With al his hole herte embrace, 1730
 So that his word be trewe and plein,
 Toward the world and so certain
 That in him be no double speche:
 For if men scholde trouthe seche
 And founde it noght withinne a king,
 It were an unsittende thing.
 The word is tokne of that withinne,
 Ther schal a worthi king beginne
 To kepe his tunge and to be trewe,
 So schal his pris ben evere newe. 1740
 Avise him every man tofore,
 And be wel war, er he be swore,
 For afterward it is to late,
 If that he wole his word debate.
 For as a king in special
 Above all othre is principal
 Of his pouer, so scholde he be
 Most vertuous in his degre;
 And that mai wel be signefied
 Be his corone and specified. 1750

The gold betokneth excellence,
 That men schull don him reverence
 As to here liege sovereign.
 The Stones, as the bokes sein,
 Commended ben in treble wise:
 Ferst thei ben harde, and thilke assisse
 Betokneth in a king Constance,
 So that ther schal no variance
 Be founde in his condicion;
 And also be descripcion 1760

1744 wolde B 1749 be wel A . . . Bs (except H: welbe)
 1751 margin Nota—designantur om. R, B, Hs

[TRUTH.]

The vertu which is in the stones
 A verrai Signe is for the nones
 Of that a king schal ben honeste
 And holde trewly his becheste
 Of thing which longeth to kinghede:
 The bryhte colour, as I rede,
 Which in the stones is schynende,
 Is in figure betoknende
 The Cronique of this worldes fame,
 Which stant upon his goode name. 1770
 The cerle which is round aboute
 Is tokne of al the lond withoute,
 Which stant under his Gerarchie, P. iii. 145
 That he it schal wel kepe and guye.
 And for that trouthe, hou so it falle,
 Is the vertu sovereign of alle,
 That longeth unto regiment,
 A tale, which is evident
 Of trouthe in comendacioun,
 Toward thin enformacion, 1780
 Mi Sone, hierafter thou schalt hiere
 Of a Cronique in this matiere.

As the Cronique it doth reherce,
 A Soldan whilom was of Perce,
 Which Daires hihte, and Ytaspis
 His fader was; and soth it is
 That thurgh wisdom and hih prudence
 Mor than for eny reverence
 Of his lignage as be descende
 The regne of thilke empire he hente:
 And as he was himselve wys,
 The wisemen he hield in pris
 And soghte hem oute on every side,
 That toward him thei scholde abide.
 Among the whiche thre ther were
 That most service unto him bere,

[KING, WINE, WOMAN
AND TRUTH.]

Hic narrat, qualiter
 Darius filius Ytaspis
 Soldanus Percie a tri-
 bus suis Cubiculariis,
 quorum nomina Ar-
 paghes, Manachaz et
 Zorobabel dicta sunt,
 nomine questionis
 singillatim interroga-
 vit, vtrum Rex aut
 mulier aut vinum ma-
 ioris fortitudinis vim
 obtineret: ipsis vero
 varia opinione re-
 spondentibus, Zoro-
 babel vltimus asseruit
 quod mulier sui amo-

1769 his worldes Hs . . . Bs 1770 goode om. AM 1789 as]
 and A . . . Bs 1791 And for he AM . . . Bs 1792 wisemen
 S, F wise men AJC, B 1793 on] in AM . . . C of L 1795
 margin asserit B

[KING, WINE, WOMAN
AND TRUTH.]

ris complacencia tam
Regis quam vini po-
tenciam excellit. Ad-
didit insuper pro finali
conclusionē dicens,
quod veritas super
omnia vincit. Cuius
responsio ceteris lau-
dabilior acceptabatur.

As thei which in his chambre lyhen
And al his conseil herde and syhen.
Here names ben of strange note,
Arpaghes was the ferste hote, 1800
And Manachaz was the secounde,
Zorobabel, as it is founde
In the Cronique, was the thridde. P. iii. 146
This Soldan, what so him betidde,
To hem he triste most of alle,
Wherof the cas is so befallē:
This lord, which hath conceiptes depe,
Upon a nyht whan he hath slepe,
As he which hath his wit desposed,
Touchende a point hem hath opposed. 1810
The kinges question was this;
Of thinges thre which strengest is,
The wyn, the womman or the king:
And that thei scholde upon this thing
Of here ansuere avised be,
He yaf hem fulli daies thre,
And hath behote hem be his feith
That who the beste reson seith,
He schal resceive a worthi mede.
Upon this thing thei token hiede 1820
And stoden in desputeison,
That be diverse opinion
Of Argumentz that thei have holde
Arpaghes ferst his tale tolde,
And seide hou that the strengthe of kinges
Is myhtiest of alle thinges.
For king hath pouer over man,
And man is he which reson can,
As he which is of his nature
The moste noble creature 1830
Of alle tho that god hath wrought:
And be that skile it semeth noight,
He seith, that eny erthly thing P. iii. 147

1797 which A, F whiche B 1800 Arpaghes AMH, XCI, B:
Arpaghes R 1805 he triste] þat trist(e) AM he trusteth Δ
1815 ansuere F

[KING, WINE, WOMAN
AND TRUTH.]

Mai be so myhty as a king.
A king mai spille, a king mai save,
A king mai make of lord a knave
And of a knave a lord also:
The pouer of a king stant so,
That he the lawes overpasseth;
What he wol make lasse, he lasseth, 1840
What he wol make more, he moreth;
And as the gentil faucon soreth,
He fleth, that noman him reclameth;
Bot he al one alle othre tameth,
And stant himself of lawe fre.
Lo, thus a kinges myht, seith he,
So as his reson can argue,
Is strengest and of most value.
Bot Manachaz seide otherwise,
That wyn is of the more emprise; 1850
And that he scheweth be this weie.
The wyn fulofte takth aweie
The reson fro the mannes herte;
The wyn can make a krepel stertere,
And a delivere man unwelde;
It makth a blind man to behelde,
And a bryht yhed seme derk;
It makth a lewed man a clerk,
And fro the clerkes the clergie 1860
It takth aweie, and couardie
It torneth into hardiesse;
Of Avarice it makth largesse.
The wyn makth ek the goode blod, P. iii. 148
In which the Soule which is good
Hath chosen hire a resting place,
Whil that the lif hir wole embrace.
And be this skile Manachas
Ansuere hath upon this cas,
And seith that wyn be weie of kinde
Is thing which mai the hertes binde 1870
Well more than the regalie.
Zorobabel for his partie
1836 of lord] a lord E, AdBT, W 1840 þe S, FW a AC, B

Seide, as him thoghte for the beste,
That wommen ben the myhtieste.
The king and the vinour also
Of wommen comen bothe tuo;
And ek he seide hou that manhede
Thurgh strengthe unto the wommanhede
Of love, wher he wole or non,
Obeie schal; and therupon,
To schewe of wommen the maistrie,
A tale which he syh with yhe
As for ensample he tolde this,—

1880

Hou Apemen, of Besaxis
Which dowhter was, in the paleis
Sittende upon his hihe deis,
Whan he was hotest in his ire
Toward the grete of his empire,
Cirus the king tirant sche tok,
And only with hire goodly lok
Sche made him debonaire and meke,
And be the chyn and be the cheke
Sche luggeth him riht as hir liste, P. iii. 149
That nou sche japeth, nou sche kiste,
And doth with him what evere hir liketh;
Whan that sche loureth, thanne he siketh,
And whan sche gladeth, he is glad:
And thus this king was overlad
With hire which his lemman was.
Among the men is no solas,
If that ther be no womman there;
For bot if that the wommen were,
This worldes joie were aweie:
Thurgh hem men finden out the weie
To kniethode and to worldes fame;
Thei make a man to drede schame,
And honour forto be desired:
Thurgh the beaute of hem is fyred
The Dart of which Cupide throweth,
Wherof the jolif peine groweth,

1890

1900

1910

1882 I sith AdBT 1883 And for AM 1884 of Besaxis
H:XRCS and Besaxis L 1902]c womman J, BT

[KING, WINE, WOMAN
AND TRUTH.]

Nota hic de vigore
amoris, qui inter Ci-
rum Regem Persarum
et Apemen Besaxis
filiam ipsius Regis
Concubinam spec-
tante tota Curia expe-
riebatur.

Which al the world hath under fote.
A womman is the mannes bote,
His lif, his deth, his wo, his wel;
And this thing mai be schewed wel,
Hou that wommen ben goode and kinde,
For in ensample this I finde.

Whan that the duk Ametus lay
Sek in his bedd, that every day
Men waiten whan he scholde deie,
Alceste his wif goth forto preie,
As sche which wolde thonk deserve,
With Sacrifice unto Minerve,

P. iii. 150

To wite ansuere of the goddesse
Hou that hir lord of his seknesse,
Wherof he was so wo besein,
Recovere myhte his hele ayein.
Lo, thus sche cride and thus sche preide,
Til ate laste a vois hir seide,
That if sche wolde for his sake
The maladie soffre and take,
And deie himself, he scholde live.
Of this ansuere Alceste hath yive
Unto Minerve gret thonkinge,
So that hir deth and his livinge
Sche ches with al hire hole entente,
And thus acorded hom sche wente.
Into the chambre and whan sche cam,
Hire housebonde anon sche nam
In bothe hire Armes and him kiste,
And spak unto him what hire liste;
And therupon withinne a throwe
This goode wif was overthrowe
And deide, and he was hool in haste.
So mai a man be reson taste,
Hou next after the god above
The trouthe of wommen and the love,
In whom that alle grace is founde,
Is myhtiest upon this grounde
And most behovely manyfold.

1920

1930

1940

1932 Of] And M, AdBT 1942 The A . . . B1

[KING, WINE, WOMAN
AND TRUTH.]

[TALE OF ALCESTIS.]

Nota de fidelitate
Coniugis, qualiter Al-
cesta vxor Ameti, vt
maritum suum viuifi-
caret, seipsam morti
spontanee subegit.

[KING, WINE, WOMAN
AND TRUTH.]

Lo, thus Zorobabel hath told 1950
 The tale of his opinion :
 Bot for final conclusion
 What strengest is of erthli thinges, P. iii. 151
 The wyn, the wommen or the kinges,
 He seith that trouthe above hem alle
 Is myhtiest, hou evere it falle.
 The trouthe, hou so it evere come,
 Mai for nothing ben overcome ;
 It mai wel soffre for a throwe,
 Bot ate laste it schal be knowe. 1960
 The proverbe is, who that is trewe,
 Him schal his while nevere rewe :
 For hou so that the cause wende,
 The trouthe is schameles ate ende,
 Bot what thing that is troutheles,
 It mai nocht wel be schameles,
 And schame hindreth every wyht :
 So proveth it, ther is no myht
 Withoute trouthe in no degre.
 And thus for trouthe of his decre 1970
 Zorobabel was most commended,
 Wherof the question was ended,
 And he resceived hath his mede
 For trouthe, which to mannes nede
 Is most behoveliche overal.
 Forthi was trouthe in special
 The ferste point in observance
 Betake unto the governance
 Of Alisandre, as it is seid :
 For therupon the ground is leid 1980
 Of every kinges regiment,
 As thing which most convenient
 Is forto sette a king in evene P. iii. 152
 Bothe in this world and ek in hevene.

viii. *Absit Avaricia, ne tangat regia corda,
 Eius enim spoliis excoriatur humus.*

1978 the om. J, AdBT 1980 therupon] vpon AM
Latin Verses viii. 2 Eius FKH:Magd rest Culus

[THE SECOND POINT OF
POLICY. LIBERALITY.]

[LIBERALITY.]

*Fama colit largum volitans per secula Regem,
 Dona tamen licitis sunt moderanda modis.*

Next after trouthe the secounde,
 In Policie as it is founde,
 Which serveth to the worldes fame
 In worschipe of a kinges name,
 Largesse it is, whos privilegge
 Ther mai non Avarice abregge.
 The worldes good was ferst comune,
 Bot afterward upon fortune
 Was thilke comun profit cessed :
 For whan the poeple stod encresced
 And the lignages woxen grete,
 Anon for singulier beyete
 Drouh every man to his partie ;
 Wherof cam in the ferste envie
 With gret debat and werres stronge,
 And laste among the men so longe, 2000
 Til noman wiste who was who,
 Ne which was frend ne which was fo.
 Til ate laste in every lond
 Withinne hemself the poeple fond
 That it was good to make a king,
 Which mihte appesen al this thing
 And yive riht to the lignages
 In partinge of here heritages
 And ek of al here other good ; P. iii. 153
 And thus above hem alle stod 2010
 The king upon his Regalie,
 As he which hath to justifie
 The worldes good fro covoitise.
 So sit it wel in alle wise
 A king between the more and lesse
 To sette his herte upon largesse
 Toward himself and ek also
 Toward his poeple ; and if nocht so,
 That is to sein, if that he be

Hic tractat de regie
 maiestatis secunda
 Policia, quam Aristotiles
 largitatem vocat : cuius
 virtute non solum propulsa
 Avaricia Regis nomen
 magnificum extollitur,
 set et sui subditi omni
 diuiciarum habundancia
 locundiores efficiuntur.

2000

P. iii. 153

2010

1992 margin subditi omni; sub dicionum (subdicionum) A . . . Bs, B
 2015 bitwene (between) more AM . . . Bs, Δ, WHs

[LIBERALITY.]

Toward himselven large and fre
And of his poeple take and pile,
Largesse be no weie of skile
It mai be seid, bot Avarice,
Which in a king is a gret vice.

A king behoveth ek to fle
The vice of Prodegalite,
That he mesure in his expence
So kepe, that of indigence
He mai be sauf: for who that nedeth,
In al his werk the worse he spedeth.

As Aristotle upon Chaldee
Ensample of gret Auctorite
Unto king Alisandre tauhte
Of thilke folk that were unsauhte
Toward here king for his pilage:
Wherof he bad, in his corage
That he unto thre pointz entende,
Wher that he wolde his good despende.

Ferst scholde he loke, hou that it stod, **P. iii. 154**
That al were of his oghne good
The yiftes whiche he wolde yive;
So myhte he wel the betre live:
And ek he moste taken hiede
If ther be cause of eny nede,
Which oghte forto be defended,
Er that his goodes be despended:

He mot ek, as it is befalle,
Amonges othre thinges alle
Se the decertes of his men;
And after that thei ben of ken
And of astat and of merite,
He schal hem largeliche aquite,
Or for the werre, or for the pes,
That non honour falle in descres,
Which mihte torne into defame,
Bot that he kepe his goode name,
So that he be noght holde unkinde.
For in Cronique a tale I finde,

2021 and pile] no pile AM 2043 Paragr. here J, SB, F &c.

Nota super hoc
quod Aristotiles Alex-
andrum exemplifi-
cavit de exaccionibus
Regis Chaldeorum.

2020

2030

2040

2050

Which spekth somdiel of this matiere,
Hierafterward as thou schalt hier.

2060

In Rome, to poursuie his riht,
Ther was a worthi povere kniht,
Which cam al one forto sein
His cause, when the court was plein,
Wher Julius was in presence.
And for him lacketh of despence,
Ther was with him non advocat
To make ple for his astat.

Bot thogh him lacke forto plede,
Him lacketh nothing of manhede;
He wiste wel his pours was povere,
Bot yit he thoghte his riht recovere,
And openly poverte alleide,
To temperour and thus he seide:

'O Julius, lord of the lawe,
Behold, mi conseil is withdrawe
For lacke of gold: do thin office
After the lawes of justice:
Help that I hadde conseil hier

Upon the trouthe of mi matiere.'
And Julius with that anon
Assigned him a worthi on,
Bot he himself no word ne spak.
This kniht was wroth and fond a lak
In temperour, and seide thus:

'O thou unkinde Julius,
Whan thou in thi bataille were
Up in Aufrique, and I was there,
Mi myht for thi rescousse I dede
And putte noman in my stede,
Thou wost what woundes ther I hadde:
Bot hier I finde thee so badde,
That thee ne liste speke o word
Thin oghne mouth, nor of thin hord

P. iii. 155

2070

2080

2090

2067 margin reuelare AM om. C 2077 do] to H₁ . . . B₁, AdBT
2078 lawe AM . . . B₁, AdBT 2093 list (luste) to H₁EB₁,
AdBT

*
*
*

U

[TALE OF JULIUS AND
THE POOR KNIGHT.]

Hic secundum gesta
Iulii exemplum
ponit, qualiter Rex
suorum militum, quos
probos agnouerit, in-
digenciam largitatis
sue beneficiis releuare
tenetur.

CONFESSIO AMANTIS

To yive a florin me to helpe.
 Hou scholde I thanne me beyelpe
 Fro this dai forth of thi largesse,
 Whan such a gret unkindenesse
 Is founde in such a lord as thou?' P. iii. 156

This Julius knew wel ynou 2100
 That al was soth which he him tolde;
 And for he wolde nocht ben holde
 Unkinde, he tok his cause on honde,
 And as it were of goddes sonde,
 He yaf him good ynouh to spende
 For evere into his lives ende.
 And thus scholde every worthi king
 Take of his knihtes knowleching,
 Whan that he syh thei hadden nede,
 For every service axeth mede: 2110
 Bot othre, whiche have nocht deserved
 Thurgh vertu, bot of japes served,
 A king schal nocht deserve grace,
 Thogh he be large in such a place.

It sit wel every king to have
 Discrecion, whan men him crave,
 So that he mai his yifte wite:
 Wherof I finde a tale write,
 Hou Cinichus a povere kniht 2120
 A Somme which was over myht
 Preide of his king Antigonus.
 The king ansuerde to him thus,
 And seide hou such a yifte passeth
 His povere astat: and thanne he lasseth,
 And axeth bot a litel peny,
 If that the king wol yive him eny.
 The king ansuerde, it was to smal
 For him, which was a lord real;
 To yive a man so litel thing P. iii. 157
 It were unworschipe in a king. 2130
 Be this ensample a king mai lere

2106 vnto H₁ . . . B₂, AdBT 2122 king om. AM 2128
 which] jat AM . . . B₂

[TALE OF JULIUS AND
 THE POOR KNIGHT.]

[ANTIGONUS AND
 CINICHUS.]

Hic ponit exem-
 plum de Rege An-
 tigonis, qualiter dona
 regia secundum maius
 et minus equa discre-
 cione moderanda sunt.

[DISCRETION IN
 GIVING.]

That forto yive is in manere:
 For if a king his tresor lasseth
 Withoute honour and thonkles passeth,
 Whan he himself wol so beguile,
 I not who schal compleigne his while,
 Ne who be rihte him schal relieve.
 Bot natheles this I believe,
 To helpe with his oghne lond
 Behoveth every man his hond 2140
 To sette upon necessite;
 And ek his kinges realte
 Mot every liege man conforte,
 With good and bodi to supporte,
 Whan thei se cause resonable:
 For who that is nocht entendable
 To holde upriht his kinges name,
 Him oghte forto be to blame.

Of Policie and overmore
 To speke in this matiere more,
 So as the Philosophre tolde,
 A king after the reule is holde
 To modifie and to adresce
 Hise yiftes upon such largesse
 That he mesure nocht excede:
 For if a king falle into nede,
 It causeth ofte sondri thinges
 Whiche are ungoodly to the kinges.
 What man wol nocht himself mesure, P. iii. 158
 Men sen fulofte that mesure 2160
 Him hath forsake: and so doth he
 That useth Prodegalite,
 Which is the moder of poverte,
 Wherof the londes ben deserte;
 And namely whan thilke vice
 Aboute a king stant in office
 And hath withholde of his partie
 The covoitouse flaterie,

2140 Bilongep AdBT 2150 margin Nota—Aristotilem om. BA
 secundum Aristotilem om. S 2155 margin Seneca] Salomon B
 2158 been (ben) A . . . B₂

Nota hic quod Re-
 gius status a suis
 fidelibus omni fauore
 supportandus est.

[PRODIGALITY OF
 KINGS.]

Nota hic secundum
 Aristotilem, qualiter
 Principum Prodegalit-
 as paupertatem in-
 ducit communem.

Seneca. Sic aliis
 benefacito, vt tibi non
 nocess.

Which many a worthi king deceiveth,
 Er he the fallas aperceiveth 2170
 Of hem that serven to the glose.
 For thei that cunnen plese and glose,
 Ben, as men tellen, the norrices
 Unto the fostringe of the vices,
 Wherof fulofte natheles
 A king is blamed gulteles.

[FLATTERERS.]

Nota qualiter in principum curiis adulatores triplici grauitate offendunt.

Primo contra deum.

Secundo contra Principem.

A Philosophre, as thou schalt hiere,
 Spak to a king of this matiere,
 And seide him wel hou that flatours
 Coupable were of thre errours. 2180
 On was toward the goddes hihe,
 That weren wrothe of that thei sihe
 The meschief which befalle scholde
 Of that the false flatour tolde.
 Toward the king an other was,
 Whan thei be sleihte and be fallas
 Of feigned wordes make him wene
 That blak is whyt and blew is grene
 Touchende of his condicion: P. iii. 159

For whanne he doth extorcion 2190
 With manye an other vice mo,
 Men schal nocht finden on of tho
 To groucche or speke therayein,
 Bot holden up his oil and sein
 That al is wel, what evere he doth;
 And thus of fals thei maken soth,
 So that here kinges yhe is blent
 And wot not hou the world is went.
 The thridde errour is harm comune,
 With which the poeple mot commune 2200
 Of wronges that thei bringen inne:
 And thus thei worchen treble sinne,
 That ben flatours aboute a king.
 Ther myhte be no worse thing
 Aboute a kinges regalie,
 Thanne is the vice of flaterie.

2198 not A, F nocht S nought J, B 2199 margin Tercio
 contra populum om. B, W

And natheles it hath ben used,
 That it was nevere yit refused
 As forto speke in court real;
 For there it is most special, 2210
 And mai nocht longe be forbore.
 Bot whan this vice of hem is bore,
 That scholden the vertus forthbringe,
 And trouthe is torned to lesinge,
 It is, as who seith, ayein kinde,
 Wherof an old ensample I finde.

Among these othre tales wise
 Of Philosophres, in this wise
 I rede, how whilom tuo ther were, P. iii. 160
 And to the Scole forto lere
 Unto Athenes fro Cartage
 Here frendes, whan thei were of Age,
 Hem sende; and ther thei stoden longe,
 Til thei such lore have underfonge,
 That in here time thei surmonte
 Alle othre men, that to acompte
 Of hem was tho the grete fame.
 The ferste of hem his rihte name
 Was Diogenes thanne hote,
 In whom was founde no riote:
 His felaw Arisippus hyhte,
 Which mochel couthe and mochel myhte.
 Bot ate laste, soth to sein,
 Thei bothe tornen hom ayein
 Unto Cartage and scole lete.
 This Diogenes no beyete

[TALE OF DIOGENES
 AND ARISTIPPUS.]

Hic contra vanitates
 adulantum loquitur,
 et narrat quod cum
 2220 Arisippus de Cartagine
 Philosophus scole
 studium relinquens
 sui Principis obsequio
 in magnis adulacionibus
 pre ceteris carior
 assistebat, accidit
 ut ipse quodam die
 Diogenem Philosophum
 nuper socium suum,
 virum tam moribus
 quam sciencia probatissimum,
 2230 herbas ad olera sua
 collectas lauantes ex
 casu ad ripam inuenit:
 cui ait. 'O Diogenes,
 vero si tu sicut et ego
 Principi tuo placere scires,
 huiusmodi herbas aut
 colligere aut lauare
 tibi minime indigeret.'
 Cui alter respondit,

2219 ff. margin Hic contra—deberes] Hic loquitur super eodem,
 et narrat quod, cum Diogenes et Arisippus philosophi a scolis
 Athenarum ad Cartaginem, vade orti fuerant, reuertissent, Ari-
 sippus curie principis sui familiaris adhesit, Diogenes vero in quodam
 mansiunculo suo studio vacans permansit. Et contigit quod, cum
 ipse quodam die ad finem orti (ortus S) sui super ripam herbas quas
 elegerat (eligerat S) ad olera lauasset, superuenit ex casu Arisippus,
 dixitque ei, 'O Diogenes, certe si Principi tuo placere scires, tu ad
 olera tua lauanda non indigeres.' Cui ille respondit, 'O Arisippe, certe
 si tu olera tua lauare scires, te in blandiciis et adulacionibus principii
 tuo seruire non oporteret.' SBAA (Lat. om. AdT)

[TALE OF DIOGENES
AND ARISTIPPUS.]

'O Arisippe, certe et
si tu sicut et ego olera
tua colligere et lauare
scires, principem tuum
ob inanis glorie cupid-
itatem blandiri nulla-
tenus deberes.'

Of worldes good or lasse or more
Ne soghte for his longe lore,
Bot tok him only forto duelle
At hom; and as the bokes telle, 2240
His hous was nyh to the rivere
Besyde a bregge, as thou schalt hiere.
Ther duelleth he to take his reste,
So as it thoghte him for the beste,
To studie in his Philosophie,
As he which wolde so defie
The worldes pompe on every syde.

Bot Arisippe his bok aside
Hath leid, and to the court he wente, P. iii. 161
Wher many a wyle and many a wente 2250
With flaterie and wordes softe
He caste, and hath compassed ofte
Hou he his Prince myhte plesse;
And in this wise he gat him ese
Of vein honour and worldes good.
The londes reule upon him stod,
The king of him was wonder glad,
And all was do, what thing he bad,
Bothe in the court and ek withoute.
With flaterie he broghte aboute 2260
His pourpos of the worldes werk,
Which was ayein the stat of clerk,
So that Philosophie he lefte
And to richesse himself upleste:
Lo, thus hadde Arisippe his wille.

Bot Diogenes duelte stille
At home and loked on his bok:
He soghte noght the worldes crok
For vein honour ne for richesse,
Bot all his hertes besinesse 2270
He sette to be vertuouus;
And thus withinne his oghne hous
He liveth to the sufficance
Of his havinge. And fell per chance,

2243 and tak) B 2251 and] and wj) AM, Δ 2262
pastat B

[TALE OF DIOGENES
AND ARISTIPPUS.]

This Diogene upon a day,
And that was in the Monthe of May,
Whan that these herbes ben holsome,
He walketh forto gadre some
In his gardin, of whiche his joutes P. iii. 162
He thoghte have, and thus aboutes 2280
Whanne he hath gadred what him liketh,
He satte him thanne doun and pyketh,
And wyssh his herbes in the fiod
Upon the which his gardin stod,
Nyh to the bregge, as I tolde er.
And hapneth, whil he sitteth ther,
Cam Arisippes be the strete
With manye hors and routes grete,
And straght unto the bregge he rod,
Wher that he hoved and abod; 2290
For as he caste his yhe nyh,
His felaw Diogene he syh,
And what he dede he syh also,
Wherof he seide to him so:

'O Diogene, god thee spede.
It were certes litel nede
To sitte there and wortes pyke,
If thou thi Prince couthest lyke,
So as I can in my degre.'
'O Arisippe,' ayein quod he, 2300
'If that thou couthist, so as I,
Thi wortes pyke, trewely
It were als litel nede or lasse,
That thou so worldly wolt compasse
With flaterie forto serve,
Wherof thou thenkest to deserve
Thi princes thonk, and to pourchace
Hou thou myht stonden in his grace,
For getinge of a litel good. P. iii. 163

If thou wolt take into thi mod 2310
Reson, thou myht be reson deeme
That so thi prince forto queeme

2282 satte S, F sate W sat J, AdBT sitte (sit) AMH, XGC
sette (set) ERLB, Δ, Hs 2294 so] jo GLB, AdBT, W

Is nocht to reson acordant,
Bot it is gretly discordant
Unto the Scoles of Athene.¹
Lo, thus ansuerde Diogene
Ayein the clerkes flaterie.

[FLATTERY.]

Bot yit men sen thessamplerie
Of Arisippe is wel received,
And thilke of Diogene is weyved. 2320
Office in court and gold in cofre
Is nou, men sein, the philosophre
Which hath the worschipe in the halle;
Bot flaterie passeth alle .
In chambre, whom the court avanceth;
For upon thilke lot it chanceth
To be beloved nou aday.

* I not if it be ye or nay,
Bot as the comun vois it telleth;
Bot wher that flaterie duelleth 2330
In eny lond under the Sonne,
Ther is ful many a thing begonne

* I not if it be ye or nay.

How Dante the poete answerde
To a flatour, the tale I herde. 2330*
Upon a strif bitwen hem tuo
He seide him, 'Ther ben many mo
Of thy servantes than of myne.
For the poete of his covyne
Hath non that wol him clothe and fede,
But a flatour may reule and lede
A king with al his lond aboute.' P. iii. 164
So stant the wise man in doute
Of hem that to folie drawe:
For such is now the newe lawe, 2340*
And as the comune vois it telleth,
Wher now that flaterie duelleth
In every lond etc. (as 2331 ff.)

2318 sein B sayne W 2329 Bot] And AdBTA 2330 Bot
wher] And wher AM... B; Wher now AdBTA 2331 euery AdBT
2329*-2340* only in AdBTA (not SΔ) 2332* seid T sayd B

[FLATTERY.]

Which were betre to be left;
That hath be schewed nou and eft.

Bot if a Prince wolde him reule
Of the Romeins after the reule,
In thilke time as it was used,
This vice scholde be refused,
Wherof the Princes ben assoted.
Bot wher the pleine trouthe is noted, 2340
Ther may a Prince wel conceive,
That he schal nocht himself deceive,
Of that he hiereth wordes pleine;
For him thar nocht be reson pleigne,
That warned is er him be wo.
And that was fully proeved tho,
Whan Rome was the worldes chief,
The Sothseiere tho was lief,
Which wolde nocht the trouthe spare,
Bot with hise wordes pleine and bare 2350
To Themperour hise sothes tolde,
As in Cronique is yit withholde,
Hierafteward as thou schalt hier
Acordende unto this matiere.

To se this olde ensamplerie,
That whilom was no flaterie
Toward the Princes wel I finde;
Wherof so as it comth to mynde,
Mi Sone, a tale unto thin Ere,
Whil that the worthi princes were 2360
At Rome, I thenke forto tellen.
For whan the chances so befellen

P. iii. 165 [THE ROMAN TRIUMPH.]

Hic narrat super
eodem, qualiter nuper
Romanorum Impera-
tor, cum ipse trium-
phator in hostes a
bello Rome rediret,
2360 tres sibi laudes in sig-
num sui triumphii
precipue debebantur:

2335 him wolde S... Δ, W 2337 as om. AM... B; (except C)
2352 is yit] it is C, AdBT 2357 ff. margin Hic narrat—aduersabitur]
Hic eciam contra vicium adulacionis ponit exemplum; et narrat
quod, cum nuper Romanorum imperator contra suos hostes victoriam
optinuisset, et cum palma triumphii (triumphe S) in urbem redire
debuisset, ne ipsum inanis glorie altitudo superextolleret, licitum fuit
pro illo die quod vnusquisque peiora que sue condicionis agnosceret
in aures suas apercius exclamaret, vt sic gaudium cum dolore com-
pesceret, et adulantum voces, sique fuerant, pro minimo computaret.
SBΔΔ (Lat. om. AdT)

[THE ROMAN TRIUMPH.]

primo quatuor equi albiissimi currum in quo sedebat veherent, secundo tunica Iovis pro tunc indueretur, tercio sui captivi prope currum ad vtrumque latus catenati deambularent. Set ne tanti honoris adulacio eius animum in superbiam extolleret, quidam scurra linguosus iuxta ipsum in curru sedebat, qui quasi continuatis vocibus improperando ei dixit, 'Notheos, hoc est nosce teipsum, quia si hodie fortuna tibi prospera fuerit, cras forte versa rota mutabilis aduersabitur.'

That eny Emperour as tho
Victoire hadde upon his fo,
And so forth cam to Rome ayein,
Of treble honour he was certein,
Wherof that he was magnified.
The ferste, as it is specefied,
Was, whan he cam at thilke tyde,
The Charr in which he scholde ryde 2370
Foure whyte Stiedes scholden drawe;
Of Jupiter be thilke lawe
The Cote he scholde were also;
Hise prisoners ek scholden go
Endlong the Charr on eyther hond,
And alle the nobles of the lond
Tofore and after with him come
Ridende and broghten him to Rome,
In thonk of his chivalerie
And for non other flaterie. 2380
And that was schewed forth withal;
Wher he sat in his Charr real,
Beside him was a Ribald set,
Which hadde hise wordes so beset,
To themperour in al his gloire P. iii. 166
He seide, 'Tak into memoire,
For al this pompe and al this pride
Let no justice gon aside, (2400*)
Bot know thiself, what so befall.
For men sen ofte time falle 2390
Thing which men wende siker stonde:
Thogh thou victoire have nou on honde,
Fortune mai nocht stonde alway;
The whiel per chance an other day
Mai torne, and thou myht overthrowe;
Ther lasteth nothing bot a throwe.'
With these wordes and with mo
This Ribald, which sat with him tho,
To Themperour his tale tolde:

2363 eny om. AM 2376 of loond A 2377 margin fortunata
A . . . B₁ 2378 margin fuerit] fuit B₁ sint H₁ . . . L 2379
margin forte om. AM tokne S . . . Δ 2384 word(e) AMXLB₁

And overmor what evere he wolde, 2400
Or were it evel or were it good,
So plainly as the trouthe stod,
He spareth nocht, bot spekth it oute;
And so myhte every man aboute
The day of that solempnete
His tale telle als wel as he
To Themperour al openly.
And al was this the cause why;
That whil he stod in that noblesse,
He scholde his vanite represse 2410
With suche wordes as he herde.

Lo nou, hou thilke time it ferde
Toward so hih a worthi lord:
For this I finde ek of record, P. iii. 167
Which the Cronique hath auctorized.
What Emperour was entronized,
The ferste day of his corone,
Wher he was in his real Throne
And hield his feste in the paleis
Sittende upon his hihe deis 2420
With al the lust that mai be gete,
Whan he was gladdest at his mete,
And every menstral hadde pleid,
And every Disour hadde seid
What most was plesant to his Ere,
Than ate laste comen there
Hise Macons, for thei scholden crave
Wher that he wolde be begrave,
And of what Ston his sepulture
Thei scholden make, and what sculpture 2430
He wolde ordeine therupon.
Tho was ther flaterie non

[THE EMPEROR AND HIS MASONS.]

Hic etiam contra adulacionem scribit quod primo die quo super Imperator intronizatus extitit, latomi sui ab ipso constanter peterent, de quali lapide sue sepulture tumulum fabricarent; vt sic futuram mortem commemorans vanitates huius seculi transitorias facilius reprimeret.

2409 that] his B 2412 it om. J, AdBT 2414 ff. margin
Hic etiam—reprimeret] Hic ponit exemplum super eodem; et narrat quod eodem die quo imperator intronizatus in palacio suo regio ad conuiuium in maiori leticia sedisset, ministri sui scultores coram ipso procederent alta voce dicentes, 'O imperator, die nobis cuius forme et vbi tumbam sculpture tue faciemus,' vt sic morte remorsus huius vite blandicias obtemperaret. SBAA but procederant SBΔ (Lat. om. AdT) 2424 Disour] Gestour AM . . . B₁ 2428 be om. AM

The worthi princes to bejape;
 The thing was other wise schape
 With good conseil; and otherwise
 Thei were hemselven thanne wise,
 And understoden wel and knewen.
 Whan suche softe wyndes blewen
 Of flaterie into here Ere,
 Thei setten nocht here hertes there; 2440
 Bot whan thei herden wordes feigned,
 The pleine trouthe it hath desdeigned
 Of hem that weren so discrete.
 So tok the flatour no beyete
 Of him that was his prince tho: P. iii. 168
 And forto proven it is so,
 A tale which befell in dede
 In a Cronique of Rome I rede.

[CAESAR'S ANSWER.]
 Cesar upon his real throne
 Wher that he sat in his persone 2450
 And was byest in al his pris,
 A man, which wolde make him wys,
 Fell down knelende in his presence,
 And dede him such a reverence,
 As thogh the hihe god it were:
 Men hadden gret mervaille there
 Of the worschipe which he dede.
 This man aros fro thilke stede,
 And forth with al the same tyde 2460
 He goth him up and be his side
 He set him doun as pier and pier,
 And seide, 'If thou that sittest hier
 Art god, which alle thinges myht,
 Thanne have I do worschipe ariht
 As to the god; and other wise,
 If thou be nocht of thilke assisse,
 Bot art a man such as am I,
 Than mai I sitte faste by,

2434 thing, king Bz, AdBT 2444 Tho took AdB Sto cok I
 2460 be om. AM 2461 as] and A 2464 do worschipe]
 worschiped AdBT

For we be bothen of o kinde.' [CAESAR'S ANSWER.]
 Cesar ansuerde and seide, 'O blinde, 2470
 Thou art a fol, it is wel sene
 Upon thiself: for if thou wene
 I be a god, thou dost amys
 To sitte wher thou sest god is;
 And if I be a man, also P. iii. 169
 Thou hast a gret folie do,
 Whan thou to such on as schal deie
 The worschipe of thi god aweie
 Hast yoven so unworthely.
 Thus mai I prove redely, 2480
 Thou art nocht wys.' And thei that herde
 Hou wysly that the king ansuerde,
 It was to hem a newe lore;
 Wherof thei dradden him the more,
 And broghten nothing to his Ere,
 Bot if it trouthe and reson were.
 So be ther manye, in such a wise
 That feignen wordes to be wise, (2500*)
 And al is verray flaterie 2490
 To him which can it wel asprie.
 The kinde flatour can nocht love
 Bot forto bringe himself above;
 For hou that evere his maister fare,
 So that himself stonde out of care,
 Him reccheth nocht; and thus fulofte
 Deceived ben with wordes softe
 The kinges that ben innocent.
 Wherof as for chastiemment
 The wise Philosophre seide,
 What king that so his tresor leide 2500
 Upon such folk, he hath the lesse,
 And yit ne doth he no largesse,
 Bot harmeth with his oghne hond
 Himself and ek his oghne lond,
 And that be many a sondri weie. P. iii. 170
 Wherof if that a man schal seie,
 As forto speke in general,

2469 boje (both) AM . . . Bz, AdBA, W 2486 if om. AM, Δ

[FLATTERERS OF A KING.]

Nota, qualiter isti circa Principem adulatores potius a Curia expelli, quam ad regie maiestatis munera acceptari. Policia suadente deberent.

[FLATTERERS OF A KING.]

Wher such thing falleth overal
 That eny king himself misreule,
 The Philosophre upon his reule 2510
 In special a cause sette,
 Which is and evere hath be the lette
 In governance aboute a king
 Upon the meschief of the thing,
 And that, he seith, is Flaterie.
 Wherof tofore as in partie
 What vice it is I have declared ;
 For who that hath his wit bewared
 Upon a flatour to believe,
 Whan that he weneth best achieve 2520
 His goode world, it is most fro.
 And forto proeven it is so
 Ensamples ther ben manyon,
 Of whiche if thou wolt knowen on,
 It is behovely forto hierie
 What whilom fell in this matiere.

[AHAB AND MICAH.]

Hic loquitur ulterius
 de consilio adulantum,
 quorum fabulis prin-
 cipis aures organizate
 veritatis auditum ca-
 pere nequunt. Et
 narrat exemplum de
 Rege Achab, qui pro
 eo quod ipse prophe-
 cias fidelis Michee
 recusavit blanditiis-
 que adulantis Zede-
 chie adhesit, Rex
 Sirie Benedab in cam-
 po bellator ipsum di-
 vino iudicio deuictum
 interfecit.

Among the kinges in the bible
 I finde a tale, and is credible,
 Of him that whilom Achab hihte,
 Which hadde al Irahel to rihte ; 2530
 Bot who that couthe glose softe
 And flatre, suche he sette alofte
 In gret astat and made hem riche ;
 Bot thei that spieken wordes liche
 To trouthe and wolde it noght forbere, P. iii. 171
 For hem was non astat to bere,
 The court of suche tok non hiede.
 Til ate laste upon a nede,
 That Benedab king of Surie
 Of Irahel a gret partie, 2540
 Which Ramoth Galaath was hote,
 Hath sesed ; and of that riote
 He tok conseil in sondri wise,
 Bot noght of hem that weren wise.

2530 Irahel (Israel) J, S, FK *rest* Israel 2536 *margin* adulantis
 A . . . B₁ 2540 Irahel (Israel) AJ, S, FK *rest* Israel

[AHAB AND MICAH.]

And natheles upon this cas
 To strengthen him, for Josaphas,
 Which thanne was king of Judee,
 He sende forto come, as he
 Which thurgh frendschipe and alliance
 Was next to him of aqueintance ; 2550
 For Joram Sone of Josaphath
 Achabbes dowhter wedded hath,
 Which hihte faire Godelie.
 And thus cam into Samarie
 King Josaphat, and he fond there
 The king Achab : and whan thei were
 Togedre spekende of this thing,
 This Josaphat seith to the king,
 Hou that he wolde gladly hierie
 Som trew prophete in this matiere, 2560
 That he his conseil myhte yive
 To what point that it schal be drive.
 And in that time so befell,
 Ther was such on in Irahel,
 Which sette him al to flaterie, P. iii. 172
 And he was cleped Sedechie ;
 And after him Achab hath sent :
 And he at his comandement
 Tofore him cam, and be a sleyhte
 He hath upon his heved on heyhte 2570
 Tuo large hornes set of bras,
 As he which al a flatour was,
 And goth rampende as a leoun
 And caste hise hornes up and doun,
 And bad men ben of good espeir,
 For as the hornes percen their,
 He seith, withoute resistence,
 So wiste he wel of his science
 That Benedab is desconfit.
 Whan Sedechie upon this plit 2580
 Hath told this tale to his lord,
 Anon ther were of his acord
 Prophetes false manye mo

2546 fro BT 2560 trew S, F trewe AC, B 2560 I schal AM

[AHAB AND MICAH.]

To bere up oil, and alle tho
 Affermen that which he hath told,
 Wherof the king Achab was bold
 And yaf hem yiftes al aboute.
 But Josaphat was in gret doute, (2600*)
 And hield fantosme al that he herde,
 Preiende Achab, hou so it ferde, 2590
 If ther were eny other man,
 The which of prophecie can,
 To hierie him speke er that thei gon.
 Quod Achab thanne, 'Ther is on,
 A brothell, which Micheas hihte; P. iii. 173
 Bot he ne comth noght in my sihte,
 For he hath longe in prison lein.
 Him liketh nevere yit to sein
 A goodly word to mi plesance;
 And natheles at thin instance 2600
 He schal come oute, and thanne he may
 Seie as he seide many day;
 For yit he seide nevere wel.'
 Tho Josaphat began somdel
 To gladen him in hope of trouthe,
 And bad withouten eny slouthe
 That men him scholden fette anon.
 And thei that weren for him gon,
 Whan that thei comen wher he was,
 Thei tolden unto Micheas 2610
 The manere hou that Sedechie
 Declared hath his prophecie;
 And therupon thei preie him faire
 That he wol seie no contraire,
 Wherof the king mai be desplesed,
 For so schal every man ben esed,
 And he mai helpe himselve also.
 Micheas upon trouthe tho
 His herte sette, and to hem seith,
 Al that belongeth to his feith 2620
 And of non other feigned thing,

2594 Ther is on] is þer non B is þer on T 2598 liked S... Δ, W
 2609 þer S... Δ 2619 him AMX... B, K

[AHAB AND MICAH.]

That wol he telle unto his king,
 Als fer as god hath yove him grace.
 Thus cam this prophete into place
 Wher he the kinges wille herde; P. iii. 174
 And he therto anon ansuerde,
 And seide unto him in this wise:
 'Mi liege lord, for mi servise,
 Which trewe hath stonden evere yit,
 Thou hast me with prisone aquit; 2630
 Bot for al that I schal noght glose
 Of trouthe als fer as I suppose;
 And as touchende of this bataille,
 Thou schalt noght of the sothe faille.
 For if it like thee to hierie,
 As I am tauht in that matiere,
 Thou miht it understonde sone;
 Bot what is afterward to done
 Advise thee, for this I sih.
 I was tofor the throne on hih, 2640
 Wher al the world me thoghte stod,
 And there I herde and understod
 The vois of god with wordes cliere
 Axende, and seide in this manere:
 "In what thing mai I best beguile
 The king Achab?" And for a while
 Upon this point thei spieken faste.
 Tho seide a spirit ate laste,
 "I undertake this emprise."
 And god him axeth in what wise. 2650
 "I schal," quod he, "deceive and lye
 With flaterende prophecie
 In suche mouthes as he lieveth."
 And he which alle thing achieveth
 Bad him go forth and don riht so. P. iii. 175
 And over this I sih also
 The noble peple of Irahel
 Dispers as Schep upon an hell,

2622 his] þe H, S... Δ 2633 this] þi S... Δ 2637 miht
 (might) JC, B mihte A, S, F 2641 S has lost two leaves (ll. 2641-
 3004) 2657 Irahel (Israel) J, FK rest Israel

* *

X

[AHAB AND NICAIAH.]

Withoute a kepere unarraied :
 And as thei wente aboute astraied, 2660
 I herde a vois unto hem sein,
 "Goth hom into your hous ayein,
 Til I for you have betre ordeigned."
 Quod Sedechie, 'Thou hast feigned
 This tale in angringe of the king.'
 And in a wraththe upon this thing
 He smot Michee upon the cheke ;
 The king him hath rebuked eke,
 And every man upon him cride :
 Thus was he schent on every side, 2670
 Ayein and into prison lad,
 For so the king himselve bad.
 The trouthe myhte noght ben herd ;
 Bot afterward as it hath ferd,
 The dede proveth his entente :
 Achab to the bataille wente,
 Wher Benedab for al his Scheld
 Him slouh, so that upon the feld
 His poeple goth aboute astray.
 Bot god, which alle thinges may, 2680
 So doth that thei no meschief have ;
 Here king was ded and thei ben save,
 And hom ayein in goddes pes
 Thei wente, and al was founde les
 That Sedechie hath seid tofore. P. iii. 176
 So sit it wel a king therefore
 To loven hem that trouthe mene ;
 For ate laste it wol be sene (2700*)
 That flaterie is nothing worth.
 Bot nou to mi matiere forth, 2690
 As forto speken overmore
 After the Philosophres lore,
 The thridde point of Policie
 I thenke forto specific.

ix. *Propter transgressos leges statuuntur in orbe,
 Ut viuant iusti Regis honore viri.*

2689 flatering AdBT 2691 euermore JM, B forthermore W

[THE THIRD POINT OF
POLICY. JUSTICE.]

[JUSTICE.]

*Lex sine iusticia populum sub principis umbra
 Deuiat, ut rectum nemo videbit iter.*

What is a lond wher men ben none ?
 What ben the men whiche are al one
 Withoute a kinges governance ?
 What is a king in his ligance,
 Wher that ther is no lawe in londe ?
 What is to take lawe on honde,
 Bot if the jugges weren trewe ?
 These olde worldes with the newe
 Who that wol take in evidence,
 Ther mai he se the experience,
 What thing it is to kepe lawe,
 Thurgh which the wronges ben withdrawe
 And rihtwisenesse stant commended,
 Wherof the regnes ben amended.
 For wher the lawe mai comune
 The lordes forth with the commune, 2710
 Ech hath his propre duete ; P. iii. 177
 And ek the kinges realte
 Of bothe his worschipe underfongeth,
 To his astat as it belongeth,
 Which of his hihe worthinesse
 Hath to governe rihtwisenesse,
 As he which schal the lawe guide.
 And natheles upon som side
 His pouer stant above the lawe,
 To yive bothe and to withdrawe 2720
 The forfet of a mannes lif ;
 But thinges whiche are excessif
 Ayein the lawe, he schal noght do
 For love ne for hate also.
 The myhtes of a king ben grete,
 Bot yit a worthi king schal lete
 Of wrong to don, al that he myhte ;
 For he which schal the poeple ryhte,
 It sit wel to his regalie
 That he himself ferst justefie 2730

Hic tractat de ter-
 cia Principum regi-
 minis Policia, que Ius-
 ticia nominata est,
 cuius condicio legibus
 incorrupta unicuique
 quod suum est equo
 pondere distribuit.

Imperatoriam ma-
 iestatem non solum
 armis, set etiam legi-
 bus oportet esse ar-
 matam.

2698 margin regiminis] Regis AM, BT, FW legis H. . . B. siue
 regis Δ (Lat. om. J, Ad, K) 2710 lorde AH; lordep M

[JUSTICE.]

Towards god in his degre:
 For his astat is elles fre
 Toward alle othre in his persone,
 Save only to the god al one,
 Which wol himself a king chastise,
 Wher that non other mai suffise.
 So were it good to taken hiede
 That ferst a king his oghne dede
 Between the vertu and the vice
 Redresce, and thanne of his justice 2740
 So sette in evene the balance P. iii. 178
 Towards othre in governance,
 That to the povere and to the riche
 Hise lawes myhten stonde liche,
 He schal excepte no persone.
 Bot for he mai nocht al him one
 In sondri places do justice,
 He schal of his real office
 With wys consideracion
 Ordeigne his deputation 2750
 Of suche jugges as ben lerned,
 So that his poeple be governed
 Be hem that trewe ben and wise.
 For if the lawe of covoitise
 Be set upon a jugges hond,
 Wo is the poeple of thilke lond,
 For wrong mai nocht himselven hyde:
 Bot elles on that other side,
 If lawe stonde with the riht,
 The poeple is glad and stant upriht. 2760
 Wher as the lawe is resonable,
 The comun poeple stant menable,
 And if the lawe torne amis,
 The poeple also mistorned is.
 And in ensample of this matiere
 Of Maximin a man mai hiere,
 Of Rome which was Emperour,

[JUSTICE OF MAXIMIN.]

Nota hic de iusticia
Maximini Imperatoris.

2747 do] to AM 2750 disputacioun AM... B₂ 2760 menable
 AXG, FW moueable (moueable &c.) H₁E, AdBT, K meuable (!)
 JMRCLB₂, Δ

That whanne he made a governour
 Be weie of substitucion
 Of Province or of region,
 He wolde ferst enquere his name,
 And let it openly proclame
 What man he were, or evel or good.
 And upon that his name stod
 Enclin to vertu or to vice,
 So wolde he sette him in office,
 Or elles putte him al aweie.
 Thus hield the lawe his rihte weie,
 Which fond no let of covoitise:
 The world stod than upon the wise, 2780
 As be ensample thou myht rede;
 And hold it in thi mynde, I rede.

In a Cronique I finde thus,
 Hou that Gayus Fabricius,
 Which whilom was Consul of Rome,
 Be whom the lawes yede and come,
 Whan the Sampnites to him broghte
 A somme of gold, and him besoghte
 To don hem favour in the lawe,
 Toward the gold he gan him drawe,
 Wherof in alle mennes lok
 A part up in his hond he tok,
 Which to his mouth in alle haste
 He putte, it forto smelle and taste,
 And to his yhe and to his Ere,
 Bot he ne fond no confort there:
 And thanne he gan it to despise,
 And tolde unto hem in this wise:
 'I not what is with gold to thryve,
 Whan non of all my wittes fyve
 Fynt savour ne delit therinne. 2800
 So is it bot a nyce Sinne
 Of gold to ben to covoitous;
 Bot he is riche and glorious,

[JUSTICE OF MAXIMIN.]
 qui cum alicuius pro-
 uincie custodem sibi
 substituere volebat,
 2770 P. iii. 179 primo de sui nominis
 fama proclamacione
 facta ipsius condicio-
 nem diligencius in-
 uestigabat.

[GAIUS FABRICIUS.]

Hic ponit exemplum
 de iudicibus incorrup-
 tis. Et narrat qualiter
 (2800*) Gayus Fabricius nuper
 Rome Consul aurum a
 Sampnitibus sibi ob-
 latum renuit, dicens
 2790 quod nobilius est au-
 rum possidentes dom-
 inio subiugare, quam
 ex auri cupiditate do-
 minii libertatem amit-
 tere.

2800
P. iii. 180

2775 Enclynd (Enclined) H₁ . . . B₂, W 2792 in to his
 AM . . . B₂ 2794 putte AC, B put F

[GAIVS FABRICIVS.]

Which hath in his subjeccion
 Tho men whiche in possession
 Ben riche of gold, and be this skile;
 For he mai aldai whan he wile,
 Or be hem lieve or be hem lothe,
 Justice don upon hem bothe.' 2810
 Lo, thus he seide, and with that word
 He threw tofore hem on the bord
 The gold out of his hond anon,
 And seide hem that he wolde non:
 So that he kepte his liberte
 To do justice and equite,
 Withoute lucre of such richesse.

Ther be nou fewe of suche, I gesse;
 For it was thilke times used,
 That every jugge was refused 2820
 Which was noght frend to comun riht;
 Bot thei that wolden stonde upriht
 For trouthe only to do justice
 Preferred were in thilke office
 To deme and jugge comun lawe:
 Which nou, men sein, is al withdrawe.
 To sette a lawe and kepe it noght
 Ther is no comun profit soght;
 Bot above alle natheles
 The lawe, which is mad for pes, 2830
 Is good to kepe for the beste,
 For that set alle men in reste. P. iii. 181

[THE EMPEROR
CONRAD.]

Hic narrat de iusticia nuper Conradi Imperatoris, cuius tempore alicuius reuerencia persone, aliqua seu precum interuencione quacunque vel auri redempcione, legum Statuta commutari seu redimi nullatenus poterunt.

The rihtful Emperour Conrade
 To kepe pes such lawe made,
 That non withinne the cite
 In destorbance of unite
 Dorste ones moeven a matiere.
 For in his time, as thou myht hier,
 What point that was for lawe set 2840
 It scholde for no gold be let,
 To what persone that it were.

2806 whiche AJ, B which C, F 2814 non] anon MCB₂ (p. m.)
 gon E 2840 good AdBT

And this broghte in the comun fere,
 Why every man the lawe dradde,
 For ther was non which favour hadde.

So as these olde bokes sein,
 I finde write hou a Romein,
 Which Consul was of the Pretoire,
 Whos name was Carmidotoire,
 He sette a lawe for the pes,
 That non, bot he be wepneles, 2850
 Schal come into the conseil hous,
 And elles as malicious
 He schal ben of the lawe ded.
 To that statut and to that red
 Acorden alle it schal be so,
 For certein cause which was tho:
 Nou lest what fell therafter sone.
 This Consul hadde forto done,
 And was into the felde ride;
 And thei him hadden longe abide, 2860
 That lordes of the conseil were, P. iii. 182
 And for him sende, and he cam there
 With swerd begert, and hath foryete,
 Til he was in the conseil sete.
 Was non of hem that made speche,
 Til he himself it wolde seche,
 And fond out the defalte himselve;
 And thanne he seide unto the tuelve,
 Whiche of the Senat weren wise,
 'I have deserved the juise, 2870
 In haste that it were do.'
 And thei him seiden alle no;
 For wel thei wiste it was no vice,
 Whan he ne thoghte no malice,
 Bot onliche of a litel slouthe:
 And thus thei leften as for routhe

[THE CONSUL CAR-
MIDOTIRUS.]

Nota exemplum de constancia iudicis; ubi narrat de Carmidotiro Rome nuper Consule, qui cum sui statuti legem nescius offendisset, Romanique super hoc penam sibi remittere voluissent, ipse propria manu, ubi nullus alius in ipsum vindicem fuit, sui criminis vindictam executus est.

2850 f. That euery man be wepneles
 That come in to &c. H₁ . . . B₂
 2857 lest] heer (here) AM . . . B₂ 2858 Thus AM 2863
 igerd (I gerde &c.) AM . . . B₂

To do justice upon his gilt,
 For that he scholde noght be spilt.
 And whanne he sih the maner hou
 Thei wolde him save, he made avou 288
 With manfull herte, and thus he seide,
 That Rome scholde nevere abraide
 His heires, whan he were of dawe,
 That here Ancestre brak the lawe.
 Forthi, er that thei weren war,
 Forth with the same swerd he bar
 The statut of his lawe he kepte,
 So that al Rome his deth bewept. (2900*)

In other place also I rede,
 Wher that a jugge his oghne dede 2890
 Ne wol noght venge of lawe broke, P. iii. 183
 The king it hath himselven wroke.

The grete king which Cambises
 Was hote, a jugge laweles
 He fond, and into remembrance
 He dede upon him such vengeance:
 Out of his skyn he was beslain
 Al quyk, and in that wise slain,
 So that his skyn was schape al meete,
 And nayled on the same seete 2900

Wher that his Sone scholde sitte.
 Advise him, if he wolde flitte
 The lawe for the coveitise,
 Ther sih he redi his juise.

Thus in defalte of other jugge
 The king mot otherwhile jugge,
 To holden up the rihte lawe.
 And forto speke of tholde dawe,
 To take ensample of that was tho,
 I finde a tale write also, 2910
 Hou that a worthi prince is holde
 The lawes of his lond to holde,
 Ferst for the hihe goddes sake,
 And ek for that him is betake

2887 *hc om. B* 2900 *vpon Hi. . . Bs.* (2889-2916 *om. R.*)

The poeple forto guide and lede,
 Which is the charge of his kinghede.

In a Cronique I rede thus
 Of the rihtful Ligurgius,
 Which of Athenis Prince was,
 Hou he the lawe in every cas, 2920
 Wherof he scholde his poeple reule, P. iii. 184
 Hath set upon so good a reule,
 In al this world that cite non
 Of lawe was so wel begon
 Forth with the trouthe of governance.
 Ther was among hem no distance,
 Bot every man hath his encress;
 Ther was withoute werre pes,
 Withoute envie love stod;
 Richesse upon the comun good
 And noght upon the singular
 Ordeigned was, and the pouer
 Of hem that weren in astat
 Was sauf: wherof upon debat
 Ther stod nothing, so that in reste
 Mihte every man his herte reste.

And whan this noble rihtful king
 Sih hou it ferde of al this thing,
 Wherof the poeple stod in ese,
 He, which for evere wolde plese 2940
 The hihe god, whos thonk he soghte,
 A wonder thing thanne him bethoghte,
 And schop if that it myhte be,
 Hou that his lawe in the cite
 Mihte afterward for evere laste.
 And therupon his wit he caste
 What thing him were best to feigne,
 That he his pourpos myhte atteigne.

A Parlement and thus he sette,
 His wisdom wher that he besette 2950
 In audience of grete and smale, P. iii. 185

[LYCURGUS AND HIS LAWS.]

Hic ponit exemplum
 de Principibus illis,
 qui non solum legem
 2920 statuentes illam con-
 servant, set vt com-
 mune bonum adauge-
 ant, propriam faculta-
 tem diminuunt. Et
 narrat quod, cum Li-
 gurgius Athenarum
 princeps subditos suos
 in omni prosperitatis
 habundancia divites et
 vnanimes congruis
 legibus stare fecisset,
 volens ad vtilitatem
 rei publice leges illas
 2930 firmitus observari, pe-
 gre proficisci se fin-
 xit; set prius iuramen-
 tum solempne a legiis
 suis sub hac forma exe-
 git, quod ipsi vsque in
 reditu suum leges
 suas nullatenus in-
 fringerent: quibus iu-
 ratis peregrinationem
 suam in exilium abs-
 que reditu pro per-
 petuo delegavit.

2920 *margin qui om. BT* 2926 *margin subditos suos om. A . . . Bs*
 2938 *margin delegatur BT* 2951 *and om. A (f. m.)*

And in this wise he tolde his tale:

'God wot, and so ye witen alle,

Hierafterward hou so it falle,

Yit into now my will hath be

To do justice and equite

In forthinge of comun profit;

Such hath ben evere my delit.

Bot of o thing I am beknowe,

The which mi will is that ye knowe: 2960

The lawe which I tok on honde,

Was altogedre of goddes sonde

And nothing of myn oghne wit;

So mot it nede endure yit,

And schal do lengere, if ye wile.

For I wol telle you the skile;

The god Mercurius and no man

He hath me tawht al that I can

Of suche lawes as I made,

Wherof that ye ben alle glade; 2970

It was the god and nothing I,

Which dede al this, and nou forthi

He hath comanded of his grace

That I schal come into a place

Which is forein out in an yle,

Wher I mot tarie for a while,

With him to speke, as he hath bede.

For as he seith, in thilke stede

He schal me suche thinges telle,

That evere, whyl the world schal duelle, 2980

Athenis schal the betre fare. P. iii. 186

Bot ferst, er that I thider fare,

For that I wolde that mi lawe

Amonges you ne be withdrawe

Ther whyles that I schal ben oute,

Forthi to setten out of doute

Bothe you and me, this wol I preie,

That ye me wolde assure and seie (3000*)

With such an oth as I wol take,

2967 no man JC, B noman A, F 2977 as] and AdBT
2989 3e wol AdBT I wold Δ

That ech of you schal undertake

Mi lawes forto kepe and holde.'

Thei seiden alle that thei wolde,

And therupon thei swore here oth,

That fro the time that he goth,

Til he to hem be come ayein,

Thei scholde hise lawes wel and plein

In every point kepe and fulfille.

Thus hath Ligurgius his wille,

And tok his leve and forth he wente.

Bot lest nou wel to what entente 3000

Of rihtwisenesse he dede so:

For after that he was ago,

He schop him nevere to be founde;

So that Athenis, which was bounde,

Nevere after scholde be relessed,

Ne thilke goode lawe cessed,

Which was for comun profit set.

And in this wise he hath it knet;

He, which the comun profit soghte,

The king, his oghne astat ne roghte; 3010

To do profit to the comune, P. iii. 187

He tok of exil the fortune,

And lefte of Prince thilke office

Only for love and for justice,

Thurgh which he thoghte, if that he myhte,

For evere after his deth to rihte

The cite which was him betake.

Wherof men oghte ensample take

The goode lawes to avance

With hem which under governance 3020

The lawes have forto kepe;

For who that wolde take kepe

Of hem that ferst the lawes founde,

Als fer as lasteth eny bounde

Of lond, here names yit ben knowe:

And if it like thee to knowe

2993 swere Hi . . . B, Ad, WK 3000 lest] heer (here)
AM . . . B, 3003 schop (schoop) AJC, B schope F 3005
S 2999 3020 which AC, S, F whiche B

Some of here names hou thei stonde,
Nou herkne and thou schalt understonde.

Of every bienfet the merite
The god himself it wol aquite; 3030
And ek fulofte it falleth so,
The world it wole aquite also,
Bot that mai nocht ben evene liche:
The god he yifh the heveneriche,
The world yifh only bot a name,
Which stant upon the goode fame
Of hem that don the goode dede.
And in this wise double mede
Resceiven thei that don wel hier;e
Wherof if that thee list to hier 3040
After the fame as it is blowe, P. iii. 188
Ther myht thou wel the sothe knowe,
Hou thilke honeste besinesse
Of hem that ferst for rihtwinesse
Among the men the lawes made,
Mai nevere upon this erthe fade.
For evere, whil ther is a tunge,
Here name schal be rad and sunge
And holde in the Cronique write;
So that the men it scholden wite, 3050
To speke good, as thei wel oghten,
Of hem that ferst the lawes soghten
In forthringe of the worldes pes.
Unto thebreus was Moises
The ferste, and to thegipcians
Mercurius, and to Troiens
Ferst was Neuma Pompilius,
To Athenes Ligurgius
Yaf ferst the lawe, and to Gregois
Foroneüs hath thilke vois, 3060
And Romulus to the Romeins.
For suche men that ben vileins
The lawe in such a wise ordeigneth,
That what man to the lawe pleigneth,

3040 to om. A . . . CBz
JC, SB suche A, F

3060 hadde AdBT

3063 such

[KINGS MUST KEEP
THE LAWS.]

Be so the jugge stonde upriht,
He schal be served of his riht.
And so ferforth it is befall
That lawe is come among ous alle:
God lieve it mote wel ben holde,
As every king therto is holde; 3070
For thing which is of kinges set, P. iii. 189
With kinges oghte it nocht be let.
What king of lawe takth no kepe,
Be lawe he mai no regne kepe.
Do lawe away, what is a king?
Wher is the riht of eny thing,
If that ther be no lawe in londe?
This oghte a king wel understonde,
As he which is to lawe swore,
That if the lawe be forbore 3080
Withouten execucioun,
It makth a lond torne up so doun,
Which is unto the king a sclandre.
Forthi unto king Alisandre
The wise Philosophre bad,
That he himselve ferst be lad
Of lawe, and forth thanne overal
So do justice in general, (3100*)
That al the wyde lond aboute
The justice of his lawe doute, 3090
And thanne schal he stonde in reste.
For therto lawe is on the beste
Above alle other erthly thing,
To make a liege drede his king.
Bot hou a king schal gete him love
Toward the hihe god above,
And ek among the men in erthe,
This nexte point, which is the ferthe
Of Aristotles lore, it techeth:
Wherof who that the Scole secheth, 3100
What Policie that it is P. iii. 190
The bok reherceth after this.

3086 he lad AM, Δ he bad Bz

3088 To do H. . . Bz

[THE FOURTH POINT
OF POLICY. PITY.]

x. *Nil rationis habens ubi velle tyrannica regna
Stringit, amor populi transiet exul ibi.
Set Pietas, regnum que conseruabit in eum,
Non tantum populo, set placet illa deo.*

It nedeth nought that I delate
The pris which preised is algate,
And hath ben evere and evere schal,
Wherof to speke in special,
It is the vertu of Pite,
Thurgh which the hihe mageste
Was stered, whan his Sone alyhte,
And in pite the world to rihte
Tok of the Maide fleissch and blod.
Pite was cause of thilke good,
Wherof that we ben alle save:
Wel oghte a man Pite to have
And the vertu to sette in pris,
Whan he himself which is al wys
Hath schewed why it schal be preised.
Pite may nought be conterpeised
Of tirannie with no peis;
For Pite makth a king courteis
Bothe in his word and in his dede.

3110

3120

It sit wel every liege drede
His king and to his heste obeie,
And riht so be the same weie
It sit a king to be pitous
Toward his poeple and gracious
Upon the reule of governance,
So that he worche no vengeance,
Which mai be cleped crualte.
Justice which doth equite
Is dredfull, for he noman spareth;
Bot in the lond wher Pite fareth
The king mai nevere faile of love,
For Pite thurgh the grace above,
So as the Philosophre affermeth,

P. iii. 191

3130

Latin Verses x. a ubi H1 . . . B1

3110 margin graciosius H1 . . . B1, W 3122 margin Nota F
om. AC, B 3135 Philosophre] holy book BTA

His regne in good astat confermeth.*
Thus seide whilom Constantin:
*What Emperour that is enclin

[PITY.]

Constantinus Im-
perator ait: 'Vere se
dominum esse com-

*Thapostle James in this wise
Seith, what man scholde do juise,
And hath not pite forth with al,
The doom of him which demeth al
He may himself fulsore drede,
That him schal lakke upon the nede
To fynde pite, whan he wolde:
For who that pite wol biholde,—
It is a poynt of Cristes lore.
And for to loken overmore,
It is bihovely, as we fynde,
To resoun and to lawe of kynde.

3150*

Cassodre in his apprise telleth,
'The regne is sauf, wher pite duelleth.'
And Tullius his tale avoweth,
And seith, 'What king to pite boweth
And with pite stant overcome,
He hath that schield of grace nome,
Which to the kinges yifh victoire.'

3160*

Cassodorus. Vbi
regnat pietas, consoli-
datur regnum.

Tullius. Qui pietate
vincitur scutum vic-
torie merito gestabit.

P. iii. 192

Of Alisandre in his histoire
I rede how he a worthi knight
Of sodein wraththe and nought of right
Forjugged hath, and he appeleth.
And with that word the king quereleth,
And seith, 'Non is above me.'
'That wot I wel my lord,' quoth he;
'Fro thy lordschipe appelle I nought,
But fro thy wraththe in al my thought
To thy pitee stant myn appeel.
The king, which understod him wel,
Of pure pite yaf him grace.
And eek I rede in other place,
Thus seide whilom etc. (as 3137 ff.)

3170*

3180*

Valerius narrat quod
cum rex Alexander in
ira sua quendam mili-
tem morti condemp-
nasset, et ille appel-
lavit, dixit rex, 'In
terra nullus maior me
est: ad quem ergo ap-
pellas?' Respondit
miles, 'Non a maies-
tate tua, set a senten-
cia ire tue tantum ad
pietatem tuam appel-
lo.' Et sic rex pietate
motus ipsum in miseri-
cordiam benignissime
suscepit.

3137-3162 Placed after 3360* in SA

3149*-3180* Only in BTA (Ad defective). Text follows B
scholde] þat scholde T 3163* þis tale T

3150*

[PIRY.]

probat, qui seruum pietatis se facit.*

Troianus ait, quod ipse subditos suos solite pietatis fauore magis quam austeritatis rigore regere, eorumque beneuolentiam potius quam timorem penes se attractare proponebat.

To Pite forto be servant,
Of al the worldes remenant 3140
He is worthi to ben a lord.
In olde bokes of record
This finde I write of essamplaire:
Troian the worthi debonaire,
Be whom that Rome stod governed,
Upon a time as he was lerned (3190*)
Of that he was to familier,
He seide unto that conseiller,
That forto ben an Emperour
His will was nocht for vein honour, 3150
Ne yit for reddour of justice;
Bot if he myhte in his office
Hise lordes and his poeple plese, P. iii. 193
Him thoghte it were a grettere ese
With love here hertes to him drawe, (3200*)
Than with the drede of eny lawe.
For whan a thing is do for doute,
Fulofte it comth the worse aboute;
Bot wher a king is Pietous,
He is the more gracious, 3160
That mochel thrift him schal betyde,
Which elles scholde torne aside.*

Of Pite forto speke plein, P. iii. 198, l. 17
Which is with mercy wel besein,

*To do pite support and grace,
The Philosophre upon a place
In his writinge of daies olde
A tale of gret essample tolde 3210*
Unto the king of Macedoine:
How between Kaire and Babeloine,
Whan comen is the somer heete,
It hapneth tuo men forto meete,

3142 ff. *margin* Troianus—proponere om. BT 3143 This A, F
Thus B 3148 *conseiller* F 3159 *pitous* (petous) JH, LB, A, W
piteous R *piteuous* X

3207*-3360* Only in SAdBTAA (Ad defective to l. 3269*). Text
follows S 3212* between S

[TALE OF CODRUS.]

Nota hic de Principis pietate erga populum, ubi narrat quod, cum Codrus Rex Athenarum contra Dorences bellum gerere de-

Fulofte he wole himselve peine
To kepe an other fro the peine:
For Charite the moder is
Of Pite, which nothyn amis
Can soffre, if he it mai amende.

As thei scholde entren in a pas,
Wher that the wyldernesse was.
And as they wenten forth spekende
Under the large wodes ende,
That o man axeth of that other:
'What man art thou, mi lieve brother? 3220*
Which is thi creance and thi feith?'
'I am paien,' that other seith,
'And be the lawe which I use
I schal nocht in mi feith refuse
To loven alle men aliche, P. iii. 194
The povere bothe and ek the riche:
Whan thei ben glade I schal be glad,
And sori whan thei ben bestad;
So schal I live in unite
With every man in his degre. 3230*
For riht as to miself I wolde,
Riht so toward alle othre I scholde
Be gracious and debonaire.
Thus have I told thee softe and faire
Mi feith, mi lawe, and mi creance;
And if thee list for aqeintance,
Now tell what maner man thou art.'
And he ansuerde upon his part:
'I am a Jew, and be mi lawe
I schal to noman be felawe 3240*
To kepe him trowthe in word ne dede,
Bot if he be withoute drede
A verrai Jew riht as am I:
For elles I mai trewely

[TALE OF THE JEW AND THE PAGAN.]

sertum itinerando ipsum de secta et fide sua strictius interrogauit. Qui respondens ait: 'Paganus sum et omnes vno animo diligam et penes vnumquemque tempore necessitatis pietatem pro posse meo excerciam.' Cui Iudeus: 'Permitte me ergo, qui lassatus itinere deficio, aliquantulum equitare. et tu respectu pietatis ob meam recreationem pedibus pro tempore incedas.' Et ita factum est, vnde postea paganus infra breue lassatus asino suo restitui a Iudeo postulauit. At ille ait: 'Nequaquam: quia fides mea est, vt illi qui sectam meam non credit, nocumentum absque pietate prouocare debeo.' Et hiis dictis asellum veloci passu coegit, et paganum a dorso illum reliquit. Quod videns paganus in terram dolens corruit, extensisque in celum manibus summam iusticiam inuocabat. Postque a terra exurgens, cum paulisper deambulasset, respexit in quendam vallem Iu-

3220* art] ar] S 3222* *margin* pietatem om. B 3223* *margin*.
excerciam S 3228* *margin*. pro tempore om. BT 3231* *margin*.
asinum sibi restitui BTA 3232* I om. BT 3234* *margin*. nocumen-
tum S nocumenta B 3242* And T 3244* *margin*. quadam valle BT

* * *

Y

[TALE OF CODRUS.]
beret, consulto prius
Appolline responsum
accepit, quod vnum de
duobus, videlicet aut
seipsum in prelio in-
terfici et populum su-
um saluari, aut popu-
lum interfici et se
saluum fieri, eligere

[TALE OF THE JEW
AND THE PAGAN.
deum a leone in mor-
tis articulo prostratum;
et sic asinum suum
cum gaudio resumens,
pietatem magis quam
austeritatem laudabi-
lem decreuit.

It sit to every man livende 3170
To be Pitous, bot non so wel
As to a king, which on the whiel (3370*)
Fortune hath set aboven alle:
For in a king, if so befall
That his Pite be ferme and stable,
To al the lond it is vailable

Bereve him bothe lif and good.
The paien herde and understod,
And thoghte it was a wonder lawe.
And thus upon here sondri sawe
Talkende bothe forth thei wente.
The dai was hoot, the sonne brente, 3250*
The paien rod upon an asse,
And of his catell more and lasse
With him a riche trusse he ladde.
The Jew, which al untrowthe hadde,
And wente upon his feet beside, P. iii. 195
Bethoghte him how he mihte ride:
And with his wordes slihe and wise
Unto the paien in this wise
He seide: 'O, now it schal be seene
What thing it is thou woldest meene: 3260*
For if thi lawe be certein
As thou hast told, I dar wel sein,
Thou wolt beholde mi destresse,
Which am so full of werinesse,
That I ne mai unethe go,
And let me ride a Myle or tuo,
So that I mai mi bodi ese.'
The paien wolde him noght despese
Of that he spak, bot in pite
It list him forto knowe and se 3270*
The pleignte which that other made;
And for he wolde his herte glade,
He lihte and made him nothing strange.

3174 if it so AM 3176 margin se] scipsum BT, Hs eligere om. BT
3251* margin after decreuit B adds et cum omni sui cordis intimo
deo gracias egit 3256* Bo]oghte S 3265* vnne]es T

Only thurgh grace of his persone; P. iii. 199 [TALE OF CODRUS.]
For the Pite of him al one oporteret. Super quo
Mai al the large realme save. Rex pietate motus
So sit it wel a king to have 3180 plebisque sue magis
Pite; for this Valeire tolde, quam proprii corporis
And seide hou that be daies olde (3380*) salutem affectans, mor-
Codrus, which was in his degre tem sibi preelegit; et
sic bellum aggrediens
pro vita multorum so-
lus interiit.

Thus was ther made a newe change,
The paien goth, the Jew alofte
Was sett upon his asse softe:
So gon thei forth carpende faste
Of this and that, til ate laste
The paien mihte go nomore,
And preide unto the Jew therfore 3280*
To suffre him ride a litel while.
The Jew, which thoghte him to beguile,
Anon rod forth the grete pas,
And to the paien in this cas
He seide, 'Thou hast do thi riht, P. iii. 196
Of that thou haddest me behiht
To do socour upon mi nede;
And that acordeth to the dede,
As thou art to the lawe holde.
And in such wise as I thee tolde, 3290*
I thenke also for mi partie
Upon the lawe of Juerie
To worche and do mi duete.
Thin asse schal go forth with me
With al thi good, which I have sesed;
And that I wot thou art desesed,
I am riht glad and noght mispaid.'
And whanne he hath these wordes said,
In alle haste he rod aweie.
This paien wot non other weie, 3300*
Bot on the ground he kneleth evene,
His handes up unto the hevenc,
And seide, 'O hihe sothfastnesse,

[TALE OF THE JEW
AND THE PAGAN.]

3278* On]is on]at AdBTA 3283* rod] go] T 3292* Iuerie
AdT Iewerie B Iurie S

[TALE OF CODRUS.]

King of Athenis the cite,
 A werre he hadde ayein Dorrence:
 And forto take his evidence
 What schal befall of the bataille,
 He thoghte he wolde him ferst consaille
 With Appollo, in whom he triste;
 Thurgh whos ansuere this he wiste, 3190

[TALE OF THE JEW
AND THE PAGAN.]

That lovest alle rihtwisse,
 Unto thi dom, lord, I appele;
 Behold and deme mi querele,
 With humble herte I thee beseche;
 The mercy bothe and ek the wreche
 I sette al in thi juggement' 3310*
 And thus upon his marrement
 This paien hath made his preiere:
 And than he ros with dreary chiere,
 And goth him forth, and in his gate
 He caste his yhe aboute algate,
 The Jew if that he mihte se. P. iii. 197
 Bot for a time it mai nocht be;
 Til ate laste ayein the nyht,
 So as god wolde, he wente ariht,
 As he which hield the hibe weie,
 And thanne he sih in a valleie 3320*
 Wher that the Jew liggende was,
 Al blodi ded upon the gras,
 Which strangled was of a leoun.
 And as he lokede up and doun,
 He fond his asse faste by
 Forth with his harneis redely
 Al hol and sound, as he it lefte,
 Whan that the Jew it him berefte:
 Wherof he thonketh god knelende.
 Lo, thus a man mai knowe at ende, 3330*
 How the pitous pite deserveth.
 For what man that to pite serveth,

3186 his om. AM an W
 3305* dom (doom) AdBT dome S 3311* made SAdBA
 mad T 3312* whan B 3327* hol BT hole SAd

[TALE OF CODRUS.]

Of tuo pointz that he myhte chese,
 Or that he wolde his body lese (3390*)
 And in bataille himselve deie,
 Or elles the seconde weie,
 To sen his poeple desconfit.
 Bot he, which Pite hath parfit
 Upon the point of his believe,

[TALE OF THE JEW
AND THE PAGAN.]

As Aristotle it berth witness,
 God schal hise foomen so represe,
 That thei schul ay stonde under foote.
 Pite, men sein, is thilke roote
 Wherof the vertus springen alle:
 What infortune that befall
 In eny lond, lacke of pite 3340*
 Is cause of thilke adversite;
 And that aldai mai schewe at yhe,
 Who that the world discretly syhe.
 Good is that every man therfore
 Take hiede of that is seid tofore;
 For of this tale and othre ynowhe P. iii. 198
 These noble princes whilom drowhe
 Here evidence and here aprise,
 As men mai finde in many a wise,
 Who that these olde bokes rede: 3350*
 And thogh thei ben in erthe dede,
 Here goode name may nocht deie
 For Pite, which thei wolde obeie,
 To do the dedes of mercy.
 And who this tale redily
 Remembre, as Aristotle it tolde,
 He mai the will of god beholde
 Upon the point as it was ended,
 Wherof that pite stod commended,
 Which is to charite felawe,
 As thei that kepen bothe o lawe. 3360*

3339* lond AdBT londe S 3342* discretely S 3348*
 many wise AdB After 3360* ins. 3137-3162 SA rest proceed
 with 3163 ff.

[TALE OF CODRUS.]

The poeple thoghte to relieve,
 And ches himselve to be ded.
 Wher is nou such an other hed, 3200
 Which wolde for the lemes dye?
 And natheles in som partie (3400*)
 It oghte a kinges herte stere,
 That he hise liege men forbere.
 And ek toward hise enemis
 Fulofte he may deserve pris,
 To take of Pite remembrance, P. iii. 200
 Wher that he myhte do vengeance:
 For whanne a king hath the victoire,
 And thanne he drawe into memoire 3210
 To do Pite in stede of wreche,
 He mai noght faile of thilke speche
 Wherof arist the worldes fame,
 To yive a Prince a worthi name.

[POMPEIUS AND THE KING OF ARMENIA.]

Hic ponit exemplum de victoriosi Principis pietate erga aduersarios suos. Et narrat quod, cum Pompeius Romanorum Imperator Regem Armenie aduersarium suum in bello victum cepisset, captumque vinculis alligatum Rome tenuisset, tyrannidis iracundie stimulos postponens, pietatis mansuetudinem operatus est. Dixit enim quod nobilius est Regem facere quam deponere: super quo dictum Regem absque vlla redemptione non solum a vinculis absoluit, set ad sui regni clementer gratuita voluntate coronatum restituit.

I rede hou whilom that Pompeie,
 To whom that Rome moste obeie,
 A werre hadde in jeupartie
 Ayein the king of Ermenie,
 Which of long time him hadde grieved.
 Bot ate laste it was achieved 3220
 That he this king desconfit hadde,
 And forth with him to Rome ladde
 As Prisoner, wher many a day
 In sori plit and povere he lay,
 The corone of his heved deposed,
 Withinne walles faste enclosed;
 And with ful gret humilite
 He soffreth his aduersite.
 Pompeie sih his pacience
 And tok pite with conscience, 3230
 So that upon his hihe deis
 Tofore al Rome in his Paleis,
 As he that wolde upon him rewe,
 Let yive him his corone newe

3198 thoghte to relieve] of his byleeue AM 3218 in Ermonic AM
 3225 on his heed B 3233 margin restituit F

[POMPEIUS AND THE KING OF ARMENIA.]

And his astat al full and plein
 Restoreth of his regne ayein,
 And seide it was more goodly thing P. iii. 201
 To make than undon a king,
 To him which pouer hadde of bothe.
 Thus thei, that weren longe wrothe, 3240
 Acorden hem to final pes;
 And yit justice natheles
 Was kept and in nothing offended;
 Wherof Pompeie was comended.
 Ther mai no king himself excuse,
 Bot if justice he kepe and use,
 Which for teschuie crualte
 He mot attempre with Pite.

Of crualte the felonie [CRUELTY.]
 Engendred is of tirannie, 3250
 Ayein the whos condicion
 God is himself the champion, (3450*)
 Whos strengthe mai noman withstonde.
 For evere yit it hath so stonde,
 That god a tirant overladde;
 Bot wher Pite the regne ladde,
 Ther mihte no fortune laste
 Which was grevous, bot ate laste
 The god himself it hath redresced.
 Pite is thilke vertu blessed 3260
 Which nevere let his Maister falle;
 Bot crualte, thogh it so falle
 That it mai regne for a throwe,
 God wole it schal ben overthrowe:
 Wherof ensamples ben ynowhe
 Of hem that thilke merel drowhe.

Of crualte I rede thus: P. iii. 202 [CRUELTY OF LEONTIUS.]
 Whan the tirant Leoncius
 Was to thempire of Rome arrived,
 Fro which he hath with strengthe prived 3270
 The pietous Justinian,

3235 and ful AM . . . B; 3244 was] is 317 S . . . A 3270
 with] je XGERL by H; no B; 3271 pitous (petows) MH; XLB;
 A. WH; piteuous AdT margin in om. H; . . . B; BTΔ

Hic loquitur contra illos, qui tyrannica potestate principatum obtinentes in iniquita-

[CRUELTY OF
LEONTIUS.]

tis sue malicia glori-
antur. Et narrat ex-
emplum, qualiter Le-
ontius tyrannus pius
Iustinianum non so-
luma solio imperatorie
maiestatis fraudulen-
ter expulit, set vt ipse
inhabilis ad regnum
in aspectu plebis effi-
ceretur, naso et labris
abscisis, ipsum tiran-
nice mutulauit. Deus
tamen, qui super om-
nia pius est, Tiberio
superueniente vna
cum adiutorio Terbel-
lis Bulgarie Regis,
Iustinianum inter-
fecto Leoncio ad im-
perium restitui miseri-
corditer procurauit.

As he which was a cruel man,
His nose of and his lippes bothe
He kutte, for he wolde him lothe
Unto the poeple and make unable.
Bot he which is al merciable,
The hihe god, ordeigneth so,
That he withinne a time also,
Whan he was strengest in his ire,
Was schoven out of his empire. 3280
Tiberius the pouer hadde,
And Rome after his will he ladde,
And for Leonce in such a wise
Ordeigneth, that he tok iuise
Of nose and lippes bothe tuo,
For that he dede an other so,
Which more worthi was than he.

Lo, which a fall hath crualte,
And Pite was set up ayein :
For after that the bokes sein, 3290
Therbellis king of Bulgarie
With helpe of his chivalerie
Justinian hath unprisoned
And to thempire ayein coroned.

In a Cronique I finde also
Of Siculus, which was ek so
A cruel king lich the tempeste, P. iii. 203
The whom no Pite myhte areste,—
He was the ferste, as bokes seie,
Upon the See which fond Galeie 3300
And let hem make for the werre,—
As he which al was out of herre (3500*)
Fro Pite and misericorde ;
For therto couthe he noght acorde,
Bot whom he myhte slen, he slouh,
And therof was he glad ynouh.

3274 margin in exemplum S . . . Δ 3276 al is SAdBT is Δ
3279 of his ire Δ in his A in hic M margin in om. BT
3298 To whom AM . . . Bz, Ad Inne whom W hom Δ
margin tyranni om. A . . . Bz

[CRUELTY OF
SICULUS.]

He hadde of conseil manyon,
Among the whiche ther was on,
Be name which Berillus hihte ;
And he bethoghte him hou he myhte 3310
Unto the tirant do likinge,
And of his oghne ymaginyng
Let forge and make a Bole of bras,
And on the side cast ther was
A Dore, wher a man mai inne,
Whan he his peine schal beginne
Thurgh fyr, which that men putten under.
And al this dede he for a wonder,
That whanne a man for peine cride,
The Bole of bras, which gapeth wyde, 3320
It scholde seme as thogh it were
A belwinge in a mannes Ere,
And noght the criinge of a man.
Bot he which alle sleintes can,
The devel, that lith in helle fast,
Him that this caste hath overcast,
That for a trespas which he dede P. iii. 204
He was' putt in the same stede,
And was himself the ferste of alle
Which was into that peine falle 3330
That he for othre men ordeigneth ;
Ther was noman which him compleigneth.

Of tirannie and crualte
Be this ensample a king mai se,
Himself and ek his conseil bothe,
Hou thei ben to mankinde lothe
And to the god abhominable.
Ensamples that ben concordable
I finde of othre Princes mo,
As thou schalt hierre, of time go. 3340

The grete tirant Dionys,
Which mannes lif sette of no pris,

3326 this caste] it cast B is cast Ad, H₂ jis made A . . . Bz
3330 vnto AdBT to Δ 3332 which] at AM . . . Bz 3338
couenable AM . . . R coueable L couable Bz (C defect.) 3340 ago
(a go) H₂E, BΔ, WH 3342 of] at A . . . Bz om. W

[DIONYSIUS AND HIS HORSES.]

Nota hic de Dionysio tyranno, qui mire crudelitatis seueritate etiam hospites suos ad deuorandum equis suis tribuit: cui Hercules tandem superueniens victum impium in impietate sua pari morte conclusit.

[LICHAON.]

Nota hic de consimili Lichaontis tyrannia, qui carnes hominum hominibus in suo hospicio ad vescendum dedit; cuius formam condicioni similem Iupiter coequans ipsum in lupum transformauit.

Unto his hors fulofte he yaf
The men in stede of corn and chaf,
So that the hors of thilke stod
Devoureden the mennes blod;
Til fortune ate laste cam,
That Hercules him overcam,
And he riht in the same wise
Of this tirant tok the juisse: 3350
As he til othre men hath do,
The same deth he deide also, (3350*)
That no Pite him hath socoured,
Til he was of hise hors deuoured.

Of Lichaon also I finde
Hou he ayein the lawe of kinde
Hise hostes slouh, and into mete P. iii. 205
He made her bodies to ben ete
With othre men withinne his hous.

Bot Jupiter the glorious, 3360
Which was commoeved of this thing,
Vengance upon this cruel king
So tok, that he fro mannes forme
Into a wolf him let transforme:
And thus the crualte was kidd,
Which of long time he hadde hidd;
A wolf he was thanne openly,
The whos nature prively
He hadde in his condicion.

And unto this conclusioun, 3370
That tirannie is to despise,
I finde ensample in sondri wise,
And nameliche of hem fulofte,
The whom fortune hath set alofte
Upon the werres forto winne.
Bot hou so that the wrong beginne
Of tirannie, it mai nocht laste,
Bot such as thei don ate laste
To othre men, such on hem falleth;
For ayein suche Pite calleth 3380

3362 margin Iupiter om. BT

Vengance to the god above.
For who that hath no tender love
In savinge of a mannes lif,
He schal be founde so gultif,
That whanne he wolde mercy crave
In time of nede, he schal non have.

Of the natures this I finde, P. iii. 206
The fierce Leon in his kinde,
Which goth rampende after his preie,
If he a man finde in his weie, 3390
He wole him slen, if he withstonde.
Bot if the man coude understonde
To falle anon before his face
In signe of mercy and of grace,
The Leon schal of his nature
Restreigne his ire in such mesure,
As thogh it were a beste tamed,
And torne away halfvinge aschamed,
That he the man schal nothing grieue.
Hou scholde than a Prince achieve 3400
The worldes grace, if that he wolde
Destruie a man whanne he is yolde (3400*)
And stant upon his mercy al?
Bot forto speke in special,
Ther have be suche and yit ther be
Tirantz, whos hertes no pite
Mai to no point of mercy plie,
That thei upon her tirannie
Ne gladen hem the men to sle;
And as the rages of the See 3410
Ben unpitous in the tempeste,
Riht so mai no Pite areste
Of crualte the gret oultrage,
Which the tirant in his corage
Engendred hath: wherof I finde
A tale, which comth nou to mynde.

I rede in olde bokes thus: P. iii. 207

3387 nature þis AdBT natures þus AM . . . B: 3397 i tamed
AM . . . B: 3412 areste] haue reste AM

[NOBLENESS OF THE LION.]
Nota qualiter Leo hominibus stratis parci.

[SPERTACHUS AND
THAMARIS.]

Hic loquitur precipue contra tyrannos illos qui, cum in bello vincere possunt, humani sanguinis effusione saturari nequunt. Et narrat in exemplum de quodam Persarum Rege, cuius nomen Spertachus erat, qui pre ceteris tunc in Oriente bellicosus et victoriosus, quoscumque gladio vincere poterat, absque pietate interfici constituit. Set tandem sub manu Thamaris Marsagetarum Regine in bello captus, quod a diu quesivit, seueritatem pro seueritate finaliter inuenit. Nam et ipsa quoddam vas de sanguine Persarum plenum ante se afferri decreuit, in quo caput tyranni vsque ad mortem mergens dixit: 'O tyrannorum crudelissime, semper esuriens sanguinem sitisti: ecce iam ad saturitatem sanguinem bibe.'

Ther was a Duk, which Spertachus
Men clepe, and was a werreiour,
A cruel man, a conquerour 3420
With strong pouer the which he ladde.
For this condicion he hadde,
That where him hapneth the victoire,
His lust and al his moste gloire
Was forto sle and noght to save:
Of rancoun wolde he no good have
For savinge of a mannes lif,
Bot al goth to the swerd and knyf,
So lief him was the mannes blod.
And natheles yit thus it stod, 3430
So as fortune aboute wente,
He fell riht heir as be descende
To Perse, and was coroned king.
And whan the worschipe of this thing
Was falle, and he was king of Perse,
If that thei weren ferst diverse,
The tyrannies whiche he wroghte,
A thousandfold welmore he soghte
Thanne afterward to do malice.
The god vengance ayein the vice 3440
Hath schape: for upon a tyde,
Whan he was heihest in his Pride,
In his rancour and in his hete
Ayein the queene of Marsagete,
Which Thameris that time hihte,
He made werre al that he myhte:
And sche, which wolde hir lond defende, P. iii. 208
Hir oghne Sone ayein him sende,
Which the defence hath undertake.
Bot he desconfit was and take; 3450
And whan this king him hadde in honde,
He wol no mercy understonde, (3650*)
Bot dede him slen in his presence.

3420 margin precipue om. A . . . B₂ 3423 hapned XERC₂
papned L 3429 to mannes b. AM . . . B₂ 3432 as he by sente A
as by sente M alle by dissent W 3436 margin offerre A . . . B₂
(offerri G, W) 3440 Til god S . . . A 3448 His AM

[SPERTACHUS AN
THAMARIS.]

The tidinge of this violence
Whan it cam to the moder Ere,
Sche sende anon ay wydewhere
To suche frendes as sche hadde,
A gret pouer til that sche ladde.
In sondri wise and tho sche caste
Hou sche this king mai overcaste; 3460
And ate laste acorded was,
That in the danger of a pass,
Thurgh which this tirant scholde passe,
Sche schop his pouer to compasse
With strengthe of men be such a weie
That he schal noght eschape aweie.
And whan sche hadde thus ordeigned,
Sche hath hir oghne bodi feigned,
For feere as thogh sche wolde flee
Out of hir lond: and whan that he 3470
Hath herd hou that this ladi fledde,
So faste after the chace he spedde,
That he was founde out of array.
For it betidde upon a day,
Into the pas whanne he was falle,
Thembuisschemenz tobrieken alle
And him beclipte on every side, P. iii. 209
That fle ne myhte he noght aside:
So that ther weren dede and take
Tuo hundred thousand for his sake, 3480
That weren with him of his host.
And thus was leid the grete bost
Of him and of his tyrannie:
It halp no mercy forto crie
To him which whilom dede non;
For he unto the queene anon
Was broght, and whan that sche him sih,
This word sche spak and seide on hih:
'O man, which out of mannes kinde

3454 dydinge AM 3464 hir, e) power H₁, BTA, W ouerpasse
AM 3465 With] By AM . . . B₂ 3476 tobrieken S, F
tobreken (to breken) AJC, B 3483 of om. AM 3484 no] not
(noght) AM . . . B₂ (except E)

[SPERTACHUS AND
THAMARIS.]

Reson of man hast left behinde 3490
 And lived worse than a beste,
 Whom Pite myhte nocht areste,
 The mannes blod to schede and spille
 Thou haddest nevere yit thi fille.
 Bot nou the laste time is come,
 That thi malice is overcome:
 As thou til othre men hast do,
 Nou schal be do to thee riht so.
 Tho had this ladi that men scholde
 A vessel bringe, in which sche wolde 3500
 Se the vengance of his juisse,
 Which sche began anon devise; (3700*)
 And tok the Princes whiche he ladde,
 Be whom his chief conseil he hadde,
 And whil hem lasteth eny breth,
 Sche made hem blede to the deth
 Into the vessel wher it stod: P. iii. 210
 And whan it was fulfild of blod,
 Sche caste this tirant therinne,
 And seide him, 'Lo, thus myht thou wynne 3510
 The lustes of thin appetit.
 In blod was whilom thi delit,
 Nou schalt thou drinken al thi fille.'
 And thus onliche of goddes wille,
 He which that wolde himselve strange
 To Pite, fond mercy so strange,
 That he withoute grace is lore.
 So may it schewe wel therefore
 That crualte hath no good ende;
 Bot Pite, hou so that it wende, 3520
 Makth that the god is merciable,
 If ther be cause resonable
 Why that a king schal be pitous.
 Bot elles, if he be doubtfulous
 To slen in cause of rihtwisenesse,
 It mai be said no Pitousnesse,
 Bot it is Pusillamite,

3503 f. him . . . him AdBT, W
 3523 Why] Wip AdBT

3510 him om. AM . . . B, Δ

[MERCY MUST BE
WITHOUT WEAKNESS.]

Which every Prince scholde flee.
 For if Pite mesure excede,
 Kinghode may nocht wel procede 3530
 To do justice upon the riht:
 For it belongeth to a knyht
 Als gladly forto fihte as reste,
 To sette his liege poeple in reste,
 Whan that the werre upon hem falleth;
 For thanne he mote, as it befalleth,
 Of his knythode as a Leon P. iii. 211
 Be to the poeple a champioun
 Withouten eny Pite feigned.
 For if manhode be restreigned, 3540
 Or be it pes or be it werre,
 Justice goth al out of herre,
 So that knythode is set behinde.
 Of Aristotles lore I finde,
 A king schal make good visage,
 That noman knowe of his corage
 Bot al honour and worthinesse:
 For if a king schal upon gesse
 Withoute verrai cause drede,
 He mai be lich to that I rede; 3550
 And thogh that it be lich a fable,
 Thensample is good and resonable. (3750*)

As it be olde daies fell,
 I rede whilom that an hell
 Up in the londes of Archade
 A wonder dredful noise made;
 For so it fell that ilke day,
 This hell on his childinge lay,
 And whan the throwes on him come,
 His noise lich the day of dome
 Was ferfull in a mannes thoght
 Of thing which that thei sihe nocht,
 Bot wel thei herden al aboute
 The noise, of which thei were in doute,

3530 Knythode R, B, W 3551 Jogh it be lich to a fable A
 Jogh it be lich a fable M 3556 And wonder dredful noise it made
 AdBT

[THE MOUNTAIN AND
THE MOUSE.]

Hic loquitur secundum
 Philosophum,
 dicens quod sicut non
 decet Principes tiran-
 nica impetuositate
 esse crudeles, ita nec
 decet timorosa pusil-
 lanimitate esse vecor-
 den.

3560

[THE MOUNTAIN AND
THE MOUSE.]

As thei that wenden to be lore
Of thing which thanne was unbore.
The nerr this hell was upon chance P. iii. 212

To taken his deliverance,
The more unbuxomliche he cride; 3570
And every man was fledd aside,

For drede and lefte his oghne hous :
And ate laste it was a Mous,
The which was bore and to norrice
Betake; and tho thei hield hem nyce,
For thei withoute cause dradde.

Thus if a king his herte ladde
With every thing that he schal hiere,
Fulofte he scholde change his chiere
And upon fantasie drede,
Whan that ther is no cause of drede. 3580

Orace to his Prince tolde,
That him were levere that he wolde
Upon knihthode Achillem suie
In time of werre, thanne eschuie,
So as Tersites dede at Troie.
Achilles al his hole joie
Sette upon Armes forto fihte;
Tersites soghte al that he myhte
Unarmed forto stonde in reste : 3590
Bot of the tuo it was the beste
That Achilles upon the nede
Hath do, wherof his knyhtlihide
Is yit comended overal.

King Salomon in special
Seith, as ther is a time of pes,
So is a time natheles
Of werre, in which a Prince algate P. iii. 213
Schal for the comun riht debate
And for his oghne worschipe eke.
Bot it behoveth noght to seke 3600

3574 hield (heeld) A, S, F heelde (helde) C, B hielden J
3575 causa F 3589 and reste AM... B₁ 3592 wher of jat
his knyhtthede H₁... B₁ wher of his knyhtthede AM, AdA, H₁
(knyhtlihide F)

Nota hic secundum
Oracium de magnanimo
Yacide et pusillanimo
Tersite.

Salomon. Tempus
belli, tempus pacis.

[THERE IS A TIME
FOR WAR.]
(3800*)

Only the werre for worschipe,
Bot to the riht of his lordschipe,
Which he is holde to defende,
Mote every worthi Prince entende.
Betwen the simplesce of Pite
And the folhaste of crualte,
Wher stant the verray hardiesce,
Ther mote a king his herte adresce,
Whanne it is time to forsake,
And whan time is also to take 3610
The dedly werres upon honde,
That he schal for no drede wonde,
If rihtwisnesse be withal.

For god is myhty overal
To forthren every mannes trowthe,
Bot it be thurgh his oghne slowthe;
And namely the kinges nede
It mai noght faile forto spede,
For he stant one for hem alle;
So mote it wel the betre falle 3620
And wel the more god favoureth,
Whan he the comun riht socoureth.
And forto se the sothe in dede,
Behold the bible and thou myht rede
Of grete ensamples manyon,
Wherof that I wol tellen on.

Upon a time as it befell, P. iii. 214 [STORY OF GIDEON.]
Ayein Judee and Irahel
Whan sondri kinges come were
In pourpos to destruye there 3630
The poeple which god kepte tho,—
And stod in thilke daies so,
That Gedeon, which scholde lede
The goddes folk, tok him to rede,
And sende in al the lond aboute,
Til he assembled hath a route
With thritti thousand of defence,

Nota qualiter inter
duo extrema consistit
virtus.

3620

3630 Hic dicit quod Princeps
iusticie causa bellum nullo modo
timere debet. Et narrat qualiter dux
Gedeon cum solis tricentis viris quinque
Reges, scilicet Madianitarum, Amalechitarum, Amonitarum, Amorcorum et

3607 hardinesse R, AdBTA, W 3615 forjere (forjre, forjer)
AM... B₁ (forje X) 3628 Irahel (iracl) J, S, F rest Israel

* *

Z

[STORY OF GIDEON.]

Iebuseorum, cum eorum exercitu, qui ad lxxxx^{ix} Milia numeratus est, gracia cooperante diuina, victorioso in fugam conuertit.

To fihte and make resistence
 Ayein the whiche hem wolde assaille:
 And natheles that o bataille 3640
 Of thre that weren enemys
 Was double mor than was al his;
 Wherof that Gedeon him dradde,
 That he so litel poeple hadde.
 Bot he which alle thing mai helpe,
 Wher that ther lacketh mannes helpe,
 To Gedeon his Angel sente,
 And bad, er that he forther wente,
 Al openly that he do crie
 That every man in his partie 3650
 Which wolde after his oghne wille
 In his delice abide stille (3850*)
 At hom in eny maner wise,
 For purchas or for covoitise,
 For lust of love or lacke of herte,
 He scholde noght aboute sterte,
 Bot holde him stille at hom in pes: P. iii. 215
 Wherof upon the morwe he les
 Wel twenty thousand men and mo,
 The whiche after the cri ben go. 3660
 Thus was with him bot only left
 The thridde part, and yit god eft
 His Angel sende and seide this
 To Gedeon: 'If it so is
 That I thin help schal undertake,
 Thou schalt yit lasse poeple take,
 Be whom mi will is that thou spede.
 Forthi tomorwe tak good hiede,
 Unto the flod whan ye be come,
 What man that hath the water nome 3670
 Up in his hond and lapeth so,
 To thi part ches out alle tho;
 And him which wery is to swinke,
 Upon his wombe and lith to drinke,

3639 hem L, S . . . Δ he A . . . CB₂, A, FWKMagd
 3641 thre] these W 3652 delit(e) H₁ . . . B₁, W 3672
 out om. AdBT

[STORY OF GIDEON.]

Forsak and put hem alle aweie.
 For I am myhti alle weie,
 Wher as me list myn help to schewe
 In goode men, thogh thei ben fewe.'
 This Gedeon awaiteth wel,
 Upon the morwe and everydel, 3680
 As god him bad, riht so he dede.
 And thus ther leften in that stede
 With him thre hundred and nomo,
 The remenant was al ago:
 Wherof that Gedeon merveileth,
 And therupon with god conseileth,
 Pleignende as ferforth as he dar. P. iii. 216
 And god, which wolde he were war
 That he schal spede upon his riht,
 Hath bede him go the same nyht 3690
 And take a man with him, to hiere
 What schal be spoke in his matere
 Among the hethen enemis;
 So mai he be the more wys,
 What afterward him schal befaller.
 This Gedeon amanges alle
 Phara, to whom he triste most,
 Be nyhte tok toward thilke host,
 Which logged was in a valleie,
 To hiere what thei wolden seie; 3700
 Upon his fot and as he ferde,
 Tuo Sarazins spekende he herde. (3900*)
 Quod on, 'Ared mi swevene ariht,
 Which I mette in mi slep to nyht.
 Me thoghte I sih a barli cake,
 Which fro the Hull his weie hath take,
 And cam rollende doun at ones;
 And as it were for the nones,
 Forth in his cours so as it ran,
 The kinges tente of Madian, 3710

3677 my lust AM 3683 nomo JC, S, F no mo(o) A, B
 3688 which] jat AM . . . B₂ 3689 scholde AdBT 3692 his]
 his AM . . . B₂, AdBTΔ, Magd 3701 he ferde] aferde AM
 3704 slep] sweuen(e) AM . . . L (slep G)

[STORY OF GIDEON.]

Of Amalech, of Amoreie,
 Of Amon and of Jebuseie,
 And many an other tente mo
 With gret noise, as me thoghte tho,
 It threw to grounde and overcaste,
 And al this host so sore agaste
 That I awok for pure drede.' P. iii. 217
 'This swevene can I wel arede,'
 Quod thother Sarazin anon:
 'The barli cake is Gedeon, 3720
 Which fro the hell down sodeinly
 Schal come and sette such ascry
 Upon the kinges and ous bothe,
 That it schal to ous alle lothe:
 For in such drede he schal ous bringe,
 That if we hadden flyht of wynges,
 The weie on fote in desespier
 We scholden leve and flen in their,
 For ther schal nothing him withstonde.'
 Whan Gedeon hath understonde 3730
 This tale, he thonketh god of al,
 And priveliche ayein he stal,
 So that no lif him hath perceived.
 And thanne he hath fulli conceived
 That he schal spede; and therupon
 The nyht suiende he schop to gon
 This multitude to assaile.
 Nou schalt thou hiere a gret mervaille,
 With what voisdie that he wroghte.
 The litel poeple which he broghte, 3740
 Was non of hem that he ne hath
 A pot of erthe, in which he tath
 A lyht brennende in a kressette,
 And ech of hem ek a trompette
 Bar in his other hond beside;
 And thus upon the nyhtes tyde
 Duk Gedeon, whan it was derk, P. iii. 218
 Ordeineth him unto his werk,

3716 his host E, B, Magd 3727 despeir AJMH:RLBz,
 AdBTA, W 3728 schullen B 3748 his] jis H:G, BA

[STORY OF GIDEON.]

And parteth thanne his folk in thre,
 And chargeth hem that thei ne fle, 3750
 And tawhte hem hou they scholde ascrie
 Alle in o vois per compaignie, (3930*)
 And what word ek thei scholden speke,
 And hou thei scholde here pottes breke
 Echon with other, whan thei herde
 That he himselve ferst so ferde;
 For whan thei come into the stede,
 He bad hem do riht as he dede.
 And thus stalkende forth a pas
 This noble Duk, whan time was, 3760
 His pot tobrak and loude ascrie,
 And tho thei breke on every side.
 The trompe was nocht forto seke;
 He blew, and so thei blewen eke
 With such a noise among hem alle,
 As thogh the hevene scholde falle.
 The hull unto here vois ansuerde,
 This host in the valleie it herde,
 And sih hou that the hell alyhte;
 So what of hieringe and of sihte, 3770
 Thei cawhten such a sodein feere,
 That non of hem belefte there:
 The tentes hole thei forsok, e
 That thei non other good ne toke,
 Bot only with here bodi bare
 Thei fledde, as doth the wylde Hare.
 And evere upon the hull thei blewe, P. iii. 219
 Til that thei sihe time, and knewe
 That thei be fled upon the rage;
 And whan thei wiste here avantage, 3780
 Thei felle anon unto the chace.
 Thus myht thou sen hou goddes grace
 Unto the goode men availeth;
 But elles ofte time it failleth
 To suche as be nocht wel disposed.
 This tale nedeth nocht be glosed,

3752 per] je AdBT jair L 3763 forto] jo to AM B.
 to W 3773 hole J, S, F holly AC, B

[STORY OF GIDEON.]

For it is openliche schewed
 That god to hem that ben wel thewed
 Hath yove and granted the victoire :
 So that thensample of this histoire 3790
 Is good for every king to holde ;
 Ferst in himself that he beholde
 If he be good of his livinge,
 And that the folk which he schal bringe
 Be good also, for thanne he may
 Be glad of many a merie day,
 In what as evere he hath to done.
 For he which sit above the Mone
 And alle thing mai spille and spede,
 In every cause, in every nede 3800
 His goode king so wel adresceþ,
 That alle his fomen he represseþ, (4000*)
 So that ther mai noman him dere ;
 And als so wel he can forbere,
 And soffre a wickid king to falle
 In hondes of his fomen alle.

[SAUL AND AGAG.]

Hic dicit quod ubi et quando causa et tempus requirunt, princeps illos sub potestate sua, quos iusticie aduersarios agnouerit, occidere de iure tenetur. Et narrat in exemplum qualiter, pro eo quod Saul Regem Agag in bello denictum iuxta Samuelis consilium occidere noluit, ipse diuino iudicio non solum a regno Israel priuatus, set et heredes sui pro perpetuo exheredati sunt.

Nou forthermore if I schal sein P. iii. 220
 Of my matiere, and torne ayein
 To speke of justice and Pite
 After the reule of realte, 3810
 This mai a king wel understonde,
 Knihthode mot ben take on honde,
 Whan that it stant upon the nede :
 He schal no rihtful cause drede,
 Nomore of werre thanne of pes,
 If he wol stonde blameles ;
 For such a cause a king mai have
 That betre him is to sle than save,
 Wherof thou myht ensample finde.
 The hihe makere of mankinde 3820
 Be Samuel to Saül bad,
 That he schal nothing ben adrad
 Ayein king Agag forto fihte ;

3797 what þat AM . . . Bs 3800 in] and AM . . . RLB.
 3819 myht (might) AC, B myhte (mihte) J, S, F

[SAUL AND AGAG.]

For this the godhede him behihte,
 That Agag schal ben overcome :
 And whan it is so ferforth come,
 That Saül hath him desconfit,
 The god bad make no respit,
 That he ne scholde him slen anon.
 Bot Saül let it overgon 3830
 And dede noght the goddes heste :
 For Agag made gret beheste
 Of rancoun which he wolde yive,
 King Saül soffreth him to live
 And feigneth pite forth withal.
 Bot he which seth and knoweth al,
 The hihe god, of that he feigneth P. iii. 221
 To Samuel upon him pleigneth,
 And sende him word, for that he lefte
 Of Agag that he ne berefte 3840
 The lif, he schal noght only dye
 Himself, bot fro his regalie
 He schal be put for everemo,
 Noght he, bot ek his heir also,
 That it schal nevere come ayein.

Thus myht thou se the sothe plein,
 That of tomoche and of tolyte
 Upon the Princes stant the wyte.
 Bot evere it was a kinges riht
 To do the dedes of a knyht ;
 For in the handes of a king
 The deth and lif is al o thing
 After the lawes of justice.
 To slen it is a dedly vice,
 Bot if a man the deth deserve ;
 And if a king the lif preserve
 Of him which oghte forto dye,
 He suieth noght thensamplerie
 Which in the bible is euident :
 Hou David in his testament, 3860
 Whan he no lengere myhte live,
 Unto his Sone in charge hath yive

3854 slen (fle) SA 3861 non F

[DAVID AND JOAB.]

Hic narrat vterius super eodem, qualiter Dauid in extremis iusticie causa vt Ioab occideretur absque vlla remissione filio suo Salomoni iniunxit.

(4050*)

[DAVID AND JOAB.]

That he Joab schal slen algate;
 And whan David was gon his gate,
 The yonge wise Salomon
 His fader heste dede anon,
 And slouh Joab in such a wise, **P. iii. 222**
 That thei that herden the juise
 Evere after dradden him the more,
 And god was ek wel paid therfore, **3870**
 That he so wolde his herte pleye
 The lawes forto justefie.
 And yit he kepte forth withal
 Pite, so as a Prince schal,
 That he no tirannie wroghte;
 He fond the wisdom which he soghte,
 And was so rihtful natheles,
 That al his lif he stod in pes,
 That he no dedly werres hadde,
 For every man his wisdom dradde. **3880**
 And as he was himselve wys,
 Riht so the worthi men of pris
 He hath of his conseil withholde;
 For that is every Prince holde,
 To make of suche his retenue
 Whiche wise ben, and to remue
 The foles: for ther is nothing
 Which mai be betre aboute a king,
 Than conseil, which is the substance
 Of all a kinges governance. **3890**

[SOLOMON'S WISDOM.]

Hic dicit quod populum sibi commissum bene regere super omnia Principi laudabilis est. Et narrat in exemplum qualiter, pro eo quod Salomon, ut populum bene regeret, ab altissimo sapientiam specialius postulavit, omnia bona pariter cum illa sibi

In Salomon a man mai see
 What thing of most necessite
 Unto a worthi king belongeth.
 Whan he his kingdom underfongeth,
 God bad him chese what he wolde,
 And seide him that he have scholde
 What he wolde axe, as of o thing. **P. iii. 223**
 And he, which was a newe king,
 Forth therupon his bone preide
 To god, and in this wise he seide: **3900**
 'O king, be whom that I schal regne,

(4100*) [SOLOMON'S WISDOM.]
 habundancius adven-
 runt.

Yif me wisdom, that I my regne,
 Forth with thi poeple which I have,
 To thin honour mai kepe and save.
 Whan Salomon his bone hath taxed,
 The god of that which he hath axed
 Was riht wel paid, and granteth sone
 Noght al only that he his bone
 Schal have of that, bot of richesse,
 Of hele, of pes, of hih noblesse, **3910**
 Forth with wisdom at his axinges,
 Which stant above alle othre thinges.

Bot what king wolde his regne save,
 Ferst him behoveth forto have
 After the god and his believe
 Such conseil which is to believe,
 Fulfild of trouthe and rihtwisnesse:
 Bot above alle in his noblesse
 Between the reddour and pite
 A king schal do such equite **3920**
 And sette the balance in evene,
 So that the hihe god in hevene
 And al the poeple of his nobleie
 Loange unto his name seie.
 For most above all erthli good,
 Wher that a king himself is good
 It helpeth, for in other weie **P. iii. 224**
 If so be that a king forsueie,
 Fulofte er this it hath be sein,
 The comun poeple is overlein
 And hath the kinges Senne aboght,
 Al thogh the poeple agulte noght.
 Of that the king his god misserveth,
 The poeple takth that he descerveth
 Hier in this world, bot elleswhere
 I not hou it schal stonde there.
 Forthi good is a king to triste
 Ferst to himself, as he ne wiste
 Non other help bot god alone;

Hic dicit secundum Salomonem, quod regie maiestatis imperium ante omnia sano consilio dirigendum est.

Quicquid delirant reges, plectuntur Achiui. **3930**

3902 I my regne] I may regne C, W I regne AdT in my regne
 H: E in me regne XRLB: 3903 thi] pe AMC

So schal the reule of his persone
 Withinne himself thurgh providence
 Ben of the betre conscience.
 And forto finde ensample of this,
 A. tale I rede, and soth it is.

In a Cronique it telleth thus :

The king of Rome Lucius
 Withinne his chambre upon a nyht
 The Steward of his hous, a knyht,
 Forth with his Chamberlein also,
 To conseil hadde bothe tuo, 3950
 And stoden be the Chiminee
 Togedre spekende alle thre. (4150*)

And happeth that the kinges fol
 Sat be the fyr upon a stol,
 As he that with his babil pleide,
 Bot yit he herde al that thei seide,
 And therof token thei non hiede. P. iii. 225

The king hem axeth what to rede
 Of such matiere as cam to mouthe,
 And thei him tolden as thei couthe. 3960

Whan al was spoke of that thei mente,
 The king with al his hole entente
 Thanne ate laste hem axeth this,
 What king men tellen that he is :
 Among the folk touchende his name,
 Or be it pris, or be it blame,
 Riht after that thei herden sein,
 He bad hem forto telle it plein,
 That thei no point of soth forbere,
 Be thilke feith that thei him bere. 3970

The Steward ferst upon this thing
 Yaf his ansuere unto the king
 And thoughte glose in this matiere,
 And seide, als fer as he can hiere,
 His name is good and honourable :
 Thus was the Steward favorable,
 That he the trouthe plein ne tolde.
 The king thanne axeth, as he scholde,

The Chamberlein of his avis.

And he, that was soubtil and wys,
 And somdiel thoughte upon his feith,
 Him tolde hou al the poeple seith
 That if his conseil were trewe,
 Thei wiste thanne wel and knewe
 That of himself he scholde be
 A worthi king in his degre :
 And thus the conseil he accuseth P. iii. 226
 In partie, and the king excuseth.

The fol, which herde of al the cas
 That time, as goddes wille was, 3980
 Sih that thei seiden nocht ynowh,
 And hem to skorne bothe lowh,
 And to the king he seide tho :
 'Sire king, if that it were so,
 Of wisdom in thin oghne mod
 That thou thiselven were good,
 Thi conseil scholde nocht be badde.'
 The king therof merueille hadde,
 Whan that a fol so wisly spak,
 And of himself fond out the lack 4000
 Withinne his oghne conscience :
 And thus the foles evidence, (4200*)
 Which was of goddes grace enspired,
 Makth that good conseil was desired.
 He putte away the vicious
 And tok to him the vertuous ;
 The wrongful lawes ben amended,
 The londes good is wel despended,
 The poeple was nomore oppressed,
 And thus stod every thing redressed. 4010
 For where a king is propre wys,
 And hath suche as himselven is
 Of his conseil, it mai nocht faile
 That every thing ne schal availe :
 The vices thanne gon aweie,
 And every vertu holt his weie ;

3984 wel Janne AMH, AdA wel than al W 3989 al of his BT
 of al his Ad al this W 3990 What tyme B 4004 that] je AdBT

[THE COURTIER AND
THE FOOL.]

Wherof the hihe god is plesed, P. iii. 227
 And al the londes folk is esed.
 For if the comun poeple crie,
 And thanne a king list nocht to plie 4020
 To hiere what the clamour wolde,
 And otherwise thanne he scholde
 Desdeigneth forto don hem grace,
 It hath be sen in many place,
 Ther hath befalle gret contraire;
 And that I finde of ensamplaire.

[FOLLY OF
REHOBAM.]

Hic dicit quod Seniores magis experti ad Principis consilium admittendi potius existunt. Et narrat qualiter, pro eo quod Roboas Salomonis filius et heres senium sermonibus renunciatis dicta iuuenum preceperit, de xii. tribubus Israel a dominio suo x. penitus amisit, et sic cum duabus tantummodo illius postea regnavit.

After the deth of Salomon,
 Whan thilke wise king was gon,
 And Roboas in his persone
 Receive scholde the corone, 4030
 The poeple upon a Parlement
 Avised were of on assent,
 And alle unto the king thei preiden,
 With comun vois and thus thei seiden:
 'Oure liege lord, we thee beseche
 That thou receive oure humble speche
 And grante ous that which reson wile,
 Or of thi grace or of thi skile,
 Thi fader, whil he was alyve
 And myhte bothe grante and pryve, 4040
 Upon the werkes whiche he hadde
 The comun poeple streite ladde:
 Whan he the temple made newe,
 Thing which men nevere afore knewe
 He broghte up thanne of his taillage,
 And al was under the visage
 Of werkes whiche he made tho. P. iii. 228
 Bot nou it is befalle so,
 That al is mad, riht as he seide,
 And he was riche whan he deide; 4050
 So that it is no maner nede,
 If thou therof wolt taken hiede, (4250*)

4020 thanne] jat A... B₂ 4031 }e parlement AM 4037
 which jat H₁... B₂, BT, W jat Ad 4044 to fore (tofore)
 AM... B₂, W

[FOLLY OF
REHOBAM.]

To pilen of the poeple more,
 Which long time hath be grieved sore.
 And in this wise as we thee seie,
 With tendre herte we thee preie
 That thou relesse thilke dette,
 Which upon ous thi fader sette.
 And if thee like to don so,
 We ben thi men for everemo, 4060
 To gon and comen at thin heste.
 The king, which herde this requeste,
 Seith that he wole ben avised,
 And hath therof a time assised;
 And in the while as he him thoghte
 Upon this thing, conseil he soghte.
 And ferst the wise knyhtes olde,
 To whom that he his tale tolde,
 Conseilen him in this manere;
 That he with love and with glad chiere 4070
 Foryive and grante al that is axed
 Of that his fader hadde taxed;
 For so he mai his regne achieve
 With thing which schal him litel grieve.
 The king hem herde and overpasseth,
 And with these othre his wit compasseth,
 That yonge were and nothing wise. P. iii. 229
 And thei these olde men despise,
 And seiden: 'Sire, it schal be schame
 For evere unto thi worthi name, 4080
 If thou ne kepe nocht the riht,
 Whil thou art in thi yonge myht,
 Which that thin olde fader gat.
 Bot seie unto the poeple plat,
 That whil thou livest in thi lond,
 The leste finger of thin hond
 It schal be strengere overal
 Than was thi fadres bodi al.
 And this also schal be thi tale,
 If he hem smot with roddes smale, 4090
 With Scorpions thou schalt hem smyte;
 4081 }i (jy) riht MH₁L, B₂ 4091 him AM

De consilio Senium.

De consilio iuuenum.

[FOLLY OF
REHOBAM.]

And wher thi fader tok a lyte,
Thou thenkst to take mochel more.
Thus schalt thou make hem drede sore
The grete herte of thi corage,
So forto holde hem in servage,

This yonge king him hath conformed
To don as he was last enformed,
Which was to him his undoinge :
For whan it cam to the spekinge, 4100
He hath the yonge conseil holde,
That he the same wordes tolde (4300*)
Of al the poeple in audience ;
And whan thei herden the sentence
Of his malice and the manace,
Anon tofore his oghne face
Thei have him outreli refused P. iii. 230
And with ful gret reproef accused.
So thei begunne forto rave,
That he was fain himself to save ; 4110
For as the wilde wode rage
Of wyndes makth the See salvage,
And that was calm bringth into wawe,
So for defalte of grace and lawe
This poeple is stered al at ones
And forth thei gon out of hise wones ;
So that of the lignages twelve
Tuo tribes only be hemselve
With him abiden and nomo :
So were thei for everemo 4120
Of no retorn withoute espeir
Departed fro the rihtfull heir.
Al Irahel with comun vois
A king upon here oghne chois
Among hemself anon thei make,
And have here yonge lord forsake ;
A povere knyht Jeroboas
Thei toke, and lefte Roboas,

4090 a lyte S alyte (alite) AJC, B, F 4093 tenkest take B
4115 is om. FWK 4123 Al Irahel (Israel) J, S, FK Al Irahel
(Israel &c.) AM . . . B, W Of Israel G, AdBT

[FOLLY OF
REHOBAM.]

Which rihtfull heir was be descente.
Lo, thus the yonge cause wente : 4130
For that the conseil was nocht good,
The regne fro the rihtfull blod
Evere afterward divided was.
So mai it proven be this cas
That yong conseil, which is to warm,
Er men be war doth ofte harm.
Old age for the conseil serveth, P. iii. 231
And lusti youthe his thonk deserveth
Upon the travail which he doth ;
And bothe, forto seie a soth, 4140
Be sondri cause forto have,
If that he wole his regne save,
A king behoveth every day.
That on can and that other mai,
Be so the king hem bothe reule,
For elles al goth out of reule.

And upon this matiere also
A question betwen the tuo
Thus writen in a bok I fond ;
Wher it be betre for the lond
A king himselve to be wys,
And so to bere his oghne pris,
And that his consail be nocht good,
Or other wise if it so stod,
A king if he be vicious
And his conseil be vertuouus.
It is ansuerd in such a wise,
That betre it is that thei be wise
Be whom that the conseil schal gon,
For thei be manye, and he is on ; 4160
And rathere schal an one man
With fals conseil, for oght he can,
From his wisdom be mad to falle,
Thanne he al one scholde hem alle
Fro vices into vertu change,
For that is wel the more strange.

[WISDOM IN A KING'S
COUNCIL.]

Nota questionem
cuiusdam Philosophi,
4150 vtrum regno conueni-
encius foret principem
(4350*) cum malo consilio op-
tare sapientem, quam
cum sano consilio ip-
sum eligere insipien-
tem.

4160 is on] but oon (on &c.) AM . . . B₂ 4161 oonly (only)
AM . . . B₂

[MERCY AND JUSTICE.]

Forthi the lond mai wel be glad, P. iii. 232
 Whos king with good conseil is lad,
 Which set him unto rihtwysnesse,
 So that his hihe worthinesse 4170
 Between the reddour and Pite
 Doth mercy forth with equite.
 A king is holden overal
 To Pite, bot in special
 To hem wher he is most beholde;
 Thei scholde his Pite most beholde
 That ben the Lieges of his lond,
 For thei ben evere under his hond
 After the goddes ordinaunce
 To stonde upon his governance. 4180

Of temperour Anthonius
 I finde hou that he seide thus,
 That levere him were forto save
 Oon of his lieges than to have
 Of enemis a thousand dede.
 And this he lernede, as I rede,
 Of Cipio, which hadde be
 Consul of Rome. And thus to se
 Diverse ensamples hou thei stonde, 4190
 A king which hath the charge on honde
 The comun poeple to governe,
 If that he wole, he mai wel lerne.
 Is non so good to the plesance
 Of god, as is good governance;
 And every governance is due
 To Pite; thus I mai argue
 That Pite is the foundement P. iii. 233
 Of every kinges regiment,
 If it be medled with justice.
 Thei tuo remuen alle vice, 4200
 And ben of vertu most vailable
 To make a kinges regne stable. (4400*)
 Lo, thus the foure pointz tofore,
 In governance as thei ben bore,

4174 bot] and AM . . . B₂ 4183 How him were leuere AdBT
 4185 an hondred AM . . . B₂ 4186 jus AdBT, W 4194 good] god F

Of trouthe ferst and of largesse,
 Of Pite forth with rihtwysnesse,
 I have hem told; and over this
 The fite point, so as it is
 Set of the reule of Policie,
 Wherof a king schal modifie 4210
 The fleisschly lustes of nature,
 Nou think I telle of such mesure,
 That bothe kinde schal be served
 And ek the lawe of god observed.

- xi. *Corporis et mentis regem decet omnis honestas,
 Nominis ut famam nulla libido ruat.
 Omne quod est hominis effeminat illa voluptas,
 Sit nisi magnanimi cordis, ut obstet ei.*

[THE FIFTH POINT OF
POLICY. CHARITY.]

The Madle is mad for the femele,
 Bot where as on desireth fele,
 That nedeth noght be weie of kinde:
 For whan a man mai redy finde
 His oghne wif, what scholde he seche
 In strange places to beseche 4220
 To borwe an other mannes plouh,
 Whan he hath geere good ynouh
 Affaited at his oghne heste, P. iii. 234
 And is to him wel more honeste
 Than other thing which is unknowe?
 Forthi scholde every good man knowe
 And thenke, hou that in mariage
 His trouthe plight lith in morgage,
 Which if he breke, it is falshode,
 And that descordeth to manhode, 4230
 And namely toward the grete,
 Wherof the bokes alle trete;
 So as the Philosophre techeth
 To Alisandre, and him betecheth
 The lore hou that he schal mesure
 His bodi, so that no mesure
 Of fleisschly lust he scholde excede.

Hic tractat secundum Aristotelem de quinta principum regiminis Policia, que Castitatem concernit, cuius honestas impudencie motus obtemperans tam corporis quam anime mundiciam specialius preseruat.

4208 ferste (first &c.) AM . . . B₂ fist Ad 4212 }enk C, S, F
 penke AJ, B 4222 good] at home S . . . A

* *

A A

[THE FIFTH POINT OF
POLICY. CHASTITY.]

And thus forth if I schal procede,
The fiftē point, as I seide er,
Is chastete, which sielede wher 4240
Comth nou adaies into place;
And natheles, bot it be grace
Above alle othre in special,
Is non that chaste mai ben all.
Bot yit a kinges hihe astat,
Which of his ordre as a prelat
Schal ben enoight and seintefied,
He mot be more magniefid
For dignete of his corone, 4250
Than scholde an other low persone,
Which is noght of so hih emprise.
Therefore a Prince him scholde advise, (4450*)
Er that he felle in such riote, P. iii. 235
And namely that he nassote
To change for the wommanhede
The worthinesse of his manhede.

Of Aristotle I have wel rad,
Hou he to Alisandre bad,
That forto gladen his corage
He schal beholde the visage 4260
Of wommen, whan that thei ben faire.
Bot yit he set an essamplaire,
His bodi so to guide and reule,
That he ne passe noght the reule,
Wherof that he himself beguile.
For in the womman is no guile
Of that a man himself bewhapeth;
Whan he his oghne wit bejapeth,
I can the wommen wel excuse:
Bot what man wole upon hem muse 4270
After the fool impression
Of his ymaginacioun,
Withinne himself the fyr he bloweth,
Wherof the womman nothing knoweth,

4239 firste (ferst &c.) H1 . . . B2, W fist(e) M, Ad 4245 hihe
(hye) AJC, S, F hih B 4262 set A, S, F sette C, B 4266
wommen AM . . . B2, W 4269 womman J, AdBT, W

Nota de doctrina
Aristotilis, qualiter
Princeps, vt animi sui
iocunditatem prouocet,
mulieres formosas
crebro aspicere debet.
Caveat tamen, ne
mens voluptuosa torpescens
ex carnis fragilitate
in vicium labatur.

[THE FIFTH POINT OF
POLICY. CHASTITY.]

So mai sche nothing be to wyte.
For if a man himself excite
To drenchē, and wol it noght forbere,
The water schal no blame bere.
What mai the gold, thogh men coveite?
If that a man wol love streite, 4280
The womman hath him nothing bounde;
If he his oghne herte wounde,
Sche mai noght lette the folie; P. iii. 236
And thogh so felle of compainie
That he myht eny thing pourchace,
Yit makth a man the ferste chace,
The womman fleth and he poursuieth:
So that be weie of skile it suieth,
The man is cause, hou so befalle,
That he fulofte sithe is falle 4290
Wher that he mai noght wel aryse.
And natheles ful manye wise
Befoled have hemself er this,
As nou adaies yit it is
Among the men and evere was,
The stronge is sieblest in this cas.
It sit a man be weie of kinde
To love, bot it is noght kinde
A man for love his wit to lese:
For if the Monthē of Juil schal frese 4300
And that Decembre schal ben hot,
The yeer mistorneth, wel I wot. (4500*)
To sen a man fro his astat
Thurgh his sotie effeminat,
And leue that a man schal do,
It is as Hose above the Scho,
To man which oghte noght ben used.
Bot yit the world hath ofte accused
Ful grete Princes of this dede,
Hou thei for love hemself mislede, 4310
Wherof manhode stod behinde,
Of olde ensamples as I finde.

4277 it om. AdBTΔ (in S) 4310 I] men S . . . Δ

[EVIL EXAMPLE OF
SARDANAPALUS.]

Hic ponit exemplum qualiter, pro eo quod Sardana Pallus Assiriorum Princeps muliebri oblectamento effeminatus sue concupiscentie torporem quasi ex consuetudine adhibebat. a Barbaro Rege Medorum super hoc insidiantie in sui feruoris maiori voluptate subitis mutationibus extinctus est.

These oide gestes tellen thus, P. iii. 237
That whilom Sardana Pallus,
Which hield al hol in his empire
The grete kingdom of Assire,
Was thurgh the slouthe of his corage
Falle into thilke fyri rage
Of love, which the men assoteth,
Wherof himself he so rioteth, 4320
And wax so ferforth womannyssh,
That ayein kinde, as if a fissh
Abide wolde upon the lond,
In wommen such a lust he fond,
That he duelte evere in chambre stille,
And only wroghte after the wille
Of wommen, so as he was bede,
That selden whanne in other stede
If that he wolde wenden oute,
To sen hou that it stod aboute. 4330
Bot ther he keste and there he pleide,
Thei tawhten him a Las to breide,
And weve a Pours, and to enfile
A Perle: and fell that ilke while,
On Barbarus the Prince of Mede
Sih hou this king in wommanhede
Was falle fro chivalerie,
And gat him help and compaignie,
And wroghte so, that ate laste
This king out of his regne he caste, 4340
Which was undon for everemo:
And yit men speken of him so,
That it is schame forto hierie. P. iii. 238

[DAVID.]

Nota qualiter David amans mulieres propter hoc probitatem Armorum non minus exercuit.

Forthi to love is in manere.
King David hadde many a love,
Bot natheles alwey above
Knythode he kepte in such a wise,
That for no fleishli covoitise

4314 Sardanapallus E, Δ, W 4316 marg. Sardanapallus ER, Δ, W
4317 marg. mulieri A . . . B₁ (except E) 4321 waxþ (waxeþ, waxeþ)
A . . . B₁, Δ, W 4322 marg. voluptati H₁ . . . B₁ 4331 þer as . . .
þer as AM 4336 how þat þe king AMLB₁ how þe k. H₁ . . . C

Of lust to ligge in ladi armes [DAVID.]
He lefte noght the lust of armes. 4350
For where a Prince hise lustes suieth,
That he the werre noght poursuieth, (4350*)
Whan it is time to ben armed,
His contre stant fulofte harmed,
Whan thenemis ben woxe bolde,
That thei 'defence non beholde.
Ful many a lond hath so be lore,
As men mai rede of time afore
Of hem that so here eses soghten,
Which after thei full diere aboghten. 4360

To mochel ese is nothing worth,
For that set every vice forth
And every vertu put abak,
Wherof priss torneth into lak,
As in Cronique I mai reherse:
Which telleth hou the king of Perse,
That Cirus hihte, a werre hadde
Ayein a poeple which he dradde,
Of a contre which Liddos hihte;
Bot yit for oght that he do mihte 4370
As in bataille upon the werre,
He hadde of hem alwey the werre.
And whan he sih and wiste it wel, P. iii. 239
That he be strengthe wan no del,
Thanne ate laste he caste a wyle
This worthi poeple to beguile,
And tok with hem a feigned pes,
Which scholde lasten endeles,
So as he seide in wordes wise,
Bot he thoghte al in other wise. 4380
For it betidd upon the cas,
Whan that this poeple in reste was,
Thei token eses manyfold;
And wordes ese, as it is told,

[CYRUS AND THE
LYDIANS.]

Hic loquitur qualiter regnum lascivie voluptatibus deditum de facili vincitur. Et ponit exemplum de Ciro Rege Persarum, qui cum Liddos mire probitatis strenuissimos sibi in bello adversantes nullo modo vincere potuit, cum ipsis tandem pacis tractatum dissimulans concordiam finalem stabiliri finxit. Super quo Liddi postea per aliquod tempus armis insoliti sub pacis torpore voluptatibus intendebant: quod Cirus percipiens in eos armatus subito irrumpit, ipsosque indefencibiles vincens sub imperio tributarios subiugavit.

4357 many JC, SB manye A, F 4362 that] it AM . . . B₁
4365 margin visuatur AM vincit W 4367 margin mirum H₁ . . . B₁
4372 marg. stabilire A . . . B₁ 4375 marg. tempore B₁, BT 4378
marg. indefencibiles F 4381 betidd S, F betidde AC, B be tid J

[CYRUS AND THE
LYDIANS.]

Be weie of kinde is the norrice
Of every lust which toucheth vice.
Thus whan thei were in lustes falle,
The werres ben foryeten alle;
Was non which wolde the worschipe
Of Armes, bot in idelschipe 439c
Thei putten besinesse aweie
And token hem to daunce and pleie;
Bot most above alle othre thinges
Thei token hem to the likinges
Of fleysshly lust, that chastete
Received was in no degre,
Bot every man doth what him liste.
And whan the king of Perse it wiste,
That thei unto folie entenden,
With his pouer, whan thei lest wenden, 440c
Mor sodeinly than doth the thunder
He cam, for evere and put hem under. (4600*)
And thus hath lecherie lore P. iii. 240
The lond, which hadde be tofore
The beste of hem that were tho.

[THE COUNSEL OF
BALAAM.]

And in the bible I finde also
A tale lich unto this thing,
Hou Amalech the paien king,
Whan that he myhte be no weie
Defende his lond and putte aweie 4410
The worthi poeple of Irael,
This Sarazin, as it befell,
Thurgh the conseil of Balaam
A route of faire wommen nam,
That lusti were and yonge of Age,
And bad hem gon to the lignage
Of these Hebreus: and forth thei wente
With yhen greye and browes bente
And wel arraied everych on;
And whan thei come were anon 4420

4395 fleysly F 440a put AJ, S, F putte C, B 4408 margin
hic om. BT 4411 Irael (Irabel) J, S, FK rest Israel 4415
of yonge age B 4415 ff. margin contaminati—cediderunt] contaminati
sunt (om. gratiam—cediderunt) BT

[THE COUNSEL OF
BALAAM.]

Among thebreus, was non insihte,
Bot cacche who that cacche myhte,
And ech of hem hise lustes soghte,
Whiche after thei full diere boghte.
For grace anon began to faile,
That whan thei comen to bataille
Thanne afterward, in sori plit
Thei were take and disconfit,
So that withinne a litel throwe 4430
The myht of hem was overthrowe,
That whilom were wont to stonde.
Til Phinees the cause on honde
Hath take, this vengeance laste, P. iii. 241
Bot thanne it cessede ate laste,
For god was paid of that he dede:
For wher he fond upon a stede
A couple which misferde so,
Thurghout he smot hem bothe tuo,
And let hem ligge in mennes yhe;
Wherof alle othre whiche hem sihe 4440
Ensamplede hem upon the dede,
And preiden unto the godhiede
Here olde Sennes to amende:
And he, which wolde his mercy sende,
Restorede hem to newe grace.
Thus mai it schewe in sondri place,
Of chastete hou the clenness
Acordeth to the worthinesse
Of men of Armes overal;
Bot most of alle in special 4450
This vertu to a king belongeth,
For upon his fortune it hongeth (4650*)
Of that his lond schal spede or spille.
Forthi bot if a king his wille
Fro lustes of his fleissh restreigne,
Ayein himself he makth a treigne,
Into the which if that he slyde,
Him were betre go besyde.
For every man mai understonde,

4424 aboughte MH,GE, AdBA 4435 gcd om. A

Hou for a time that it stonde, 4460
 It is a sori lust to lyke,
 Whos ende makth a man to syke
 And torneth joies into sorwe. P. iii. 242
 The brihte Sonne be the morwe
 Beschyneth nocht the derke nyht,
 The lusti youthe of mannes myht,
 In Age bot it stonde wel,
 Mistorneth al the laste whiel.

[EVIL EXAMPLE OF
 SOLOMON.]

Hic loquitur qualiter
 Principum irregularata
 voluptas eos a semita
 recta multociens de-
 uiare compellit. Et
 narrat exemplum de
 Salomone, qui ex sue
 carnis concupiscencia
 victus mulierum blan-
 dimentis in sui scan-
 dalum deos alienos
 colere presumebat.

That every worthi Prince is holde
 Withinne himself himself beholde, 4470
 To se the stat of his persone,
 And thenke hou ther be joies none
 Upon this Erthe mad to laste,
 And hou the fleissch schal ate laste
 The lustes of this lif forsake,
 Him oghte a gret ensample take
 Of Salomon, whos appetit
 Was holy set upon delit,
 To take of wommen the plesance :
 So that upon his ignorance 4480
 The wyde world merveilth yit,
 That he, which alle mennes wit
 In thilke time hath overpassed,
 With fleissshly lustes was so tassed,
 That he which ladde under the lawe
 The poeple of god, himself withdrawe
 He hath fro god in such a wise,
 That he worschipe and sacrificise
 For sondri love in sondri stede
 Unto the false goddes dede. 4490
 This was the wise ecclesiaste,
 The fame of whom schal evere laste,
 That he the myhti god forsok, P. iii. 243
 Ayein the lawe whanne he tok
 Hise wyves and hise concubines
 Of hem that weren Sarazines,
 For whiche he dede ydolatrie.

4471 jastat (je astate) AdBT 4492 of which B om. Ad

For this I rede of his sotie :
 Sche of Sidoyne so him ladde,
 That he knelende hise armes spradde 4500
 To Astrathen with gret humblesse,
 Which of hire lond was the goddesse : (4700*)
 And sche that was a Moabite
 So ferforth made him to delite
 Thurgh lust, which al his wit devoureth,
 That he Chamos hire god honoureth.
 An other Amonyte also
 With love him hath assoted so,
 Hire god Moloch that with encense
 He sacreth, and doth reverence 4510
 In such a wise as'sche him bad.
 Thus was the wiseste overlad
 With blinde lustes whiche he soghte ;
 Bot he it afterward aboghte.
 For Achias Selonites,
 Which was prophete, er his decess,
 Whil he was in hise lustes alle,
 Betokneth what schal after falle.
 For on a day, whan that he mette
 Jeroboam the knyht, he grette 4520
 And bad him that he scholde abyde,
 To hierie what him schal betyde.
 And forth withal Achias caste
 His mantell of, and also faste P. iii. 244
 He kut it into pieces twelve,
 Wherof tuo partz toward himselve
 He kepte, and al the remenant,
 As god hath set his covenant,
 He tok unto Jeroboas,
 Of Nabal which the Sone was 4530
 And of the kinges court a knyht :
 And seide him, 'Such is goddes myht,
 As thou hast sen departed hierie
 Mi mantell, riht in such manere
 After the deth of Salomon
 God hath ordeigned therupon,

[EVIL EXAMPLE OF
 SOLOMON.]

De filia Regis Ci-
 donie.

De filia Regis Moab.

De filia Regis A-
 mon.

[DIVISION OF HIS
 KINGDOM.]

Nota hic qualiter
 Achias propheta, in
 signum quod regnum
 post mortem Salomo-
 nis ob eius peccatum
 a suo herede diminu-
 eretur, pallium suum
 in xii. partes scidit,
 vnde x. partes Ieroboe
 filio Nabal, qui regnat-
 urus postea successit,
 precepto dei tribuit.

4525 kut (kutt) AJC, S, F cutte B 4526 toward] vnto AdBT

[DIVISION OF HIS
- KINGDOM.]

This regne thanne he schal divide :
 Which time thou schalt ek abide,
 And upon that division
 The regne as in proporcion 4540
 As thou hast of mi mantell take,
 Thou schalt receive, I undertake.
 And thus the Sone schal abie
 The lustes and the lecherie
 Of him which nou his fader is.
 So forto taken hiede of this,
 It sit a king wel to be chaste,
 For elles he mai lihtly waste
 Himself and ek his regne bothe, 4550
 And that oghte every king to lothe.
 O, which a Senne violent,
 Wherof so wys a king was schent, (4750*)
 That the vengance in his persone P. iii. 245
 Was nocht ynouh to take al one,
 Bot afterward, whan he was passed,
 It hath his heritage lassed,
 As I more openli tofore
 The tale tolde. And thus therfore
 The Philosophre upon this thing
 Writ and conseileth to a king, 4560
 That he the surfet of luxure
 Schal tempre and reule of such mesure,
 Which be to kinde sufficant
 And ek to reson acordant,
 So that the lustes ignorance
 Be cause of no misgovernance,
 Thurgh which that he be overthrowe,
 As he that wol no reson knowe.
 For bot a mannes wit be swerved,
 Whan kinde is dueliche served, 4570
 It oghte of reson to suffise ;
 For if it falle him otherwise,
 He mai tho lustes sore drede.

4557 f. As more . . . is told AdB As more . . . tolde T 4559
 margin Aristotiles om. B 4572a fille H1 . . . B1 fulle AM
 4573 tho] e H1 . . . B2, AdΔ, W

Aristotiles. O Alexander, super omnia
 consulo, conserua tibi
 calorem naturalem.

[ANTONIUS,
De voluptuoso An-
tonio.

For of Anthonie thus I rede,
 Which of Severus was the Sone,
 That he his lif of comun wone
 Yaf holy unto thilke vice,
 And ofte time he was so nyce,
 Wherof nature hire hath compleigned
 Unto the god, which hath desdeigned 4580
 The werkes whiche Antonie wroghte
 Of lust, whiche he ful sore aboghte :
 For god his forfet hath so wroke P. iii. 246
 That in Cronique it is yit spoke.
 Bot forto take remembrance
 Of special misgovernance
 Thurgh covoitise and injustice
 Forth with the remenant of vice,
 And nameliche of lecherie,
 I finde write a gret partie 4590
 Withinne a tale, as thou schalt hiere,
 Which is thensample of this matiere.

So as these olde gastes sein,
 The proude tyrannysch Romein
 Tarquinius, which was thanne king
 And wroghte many a wrongful thing.
 Of Sones hadde manyon,
 Among the whiche Arrons was on,
 Lich to his fader of maneres ;
 So that withinne a fewe yeres
 With tresoun and with tirannie
 Thei wonne of lond a gret partie, 4600
 And token hiede of no justice,
 Which due was to here office
 Upon the reule of governance ;
 Bot al that evere was plesance
 Unto the fleissches lust thei toke.
 And fell so, that thei undertoke
 A werre, which was nocht achieved,

4574 Anthonie AJ, F Anthonie S antoigne B 4581 Anthonie S
 Anthonie A Antoine J, B, F 4595 margin nuper Rome] rome
 nuper BT nuper A om. M

[TARQUIN AND HIS
SON ARRON.]

Hic loquitur de Tar-
 quino nuper Rome Im-
 peratore, necnon et de
 eiusdem filio nomine
 Arrons, qui omni vici-
 orum varietate repleti
 tam in homines quam
 in mulieres innumera
 scelera perpetrarunt :
 set specialiter super
 his que contra Gabi-
 nos fraudulentem ope-
 rati sunt tractare in-
 tendit. 4600 (4800*)

[TARQUIN AND HIS
SON ARUNS.]

Bot ofte time it hadde hem grieved, 4610
 Ayein a folk which thanne hihte
 The Gabiens : and al be nyhte
 This Arrons, whan he was at hom P. iii. 247
 In Rome, a prive place he nom
 Withinne a chambre, and bet himselve
 And made him woundes ten or tuelve
 Upon the bak, as it was sene ;
 And so forth with hise hurtes grene
 In al the haste that he may
 He rod, and cam that other day 4620
 Unto Gabie the Cite,
 And in he wente : and whan that he
 Was knowe, anon the gates schette,
 The lordes alle upon him sette
 With drawe swerdes upon honde.
 This Arrons wolde hem nocht withstonde,
 Bot seide, 'I am hier at your wille,
 Als lief it is that ye me spille,
 As if myn oghne fader dede.'
 And forthwith in the same stede 4630
 He preide hem that thei wolde se,
 And schewede hem in what degre
 His fader and hise brethren bothe,
 Whiche, as he seide, weren wrothe,
 Him hadde beten and reviled,
 For evere and out of Rome exiled.
 And thus he made hem to believe,
 And seide, if that he myhte achieve
 His pourpos, it schal wel be yolde,
 Be so that thei him helpe wolde. 4640
 Whan that the lordes hadde sein
 Hou wofully he was besein,
 Thei token Pite of his grief ; P. iii. 248
 Bot yit it was hem wonder lief
 That Rome him hadde exiled so.
 These Gabiens be conseil tho
 Upon the goddes made him swere,

4610 he hadde AM... Br 4611 a] ꝑc LBs, Δ om. AM, T 4620
ye me] I me AdBT 4641 Whan ꝑc lordes AM 4646 The Bz, AdBT

[TARQUIN AND HIS
SON ARUNS.]

That he to hem schal trouthe bere
 And strengthen hem with al his myht ;
 And thei also him have behiht 4650
 To helpen him in his querele.
 Thei schopen thanne for his hele (4850*)
 That he was bathed and enoight,
 Til that he was in lusti point ;
 And what he wolde thanne he hadde,
 That he al hol the cite ladde
 Riht as he wolde himself divise.
 And thanne he thoughte him in what wise
 He myhte his tirannie schewe ;
 And to his conseil tok a schrewe, 4660
 Whom to his fader forth he sente
 In his message, and he tho wente,
 And preide his fader forto seie
 Be his avis, and finde a weie,
 Hou they the cite myhten winne,
 Whil that he stod so wel therinne.
 And whan the messenger was come
 To Rome, and hath in conseil nome
 The king, it fell per chance so
 That thei were in a gardin tho, 4670
 This messenger forth with the king.
 And whanne he hadde told the thing
 In what manere that it stod, P. iii. 249
 And that Tarquinius understod
 Be the message hou that it ferde,
 Anon he tok in honde a yerde,
 And in the gardin as thei gon,
 The lillie croppes on and on,
 Wher that thei weren sprongen oute,
 He smot of, as thei stode aboute, 4680
 And seide unto the messenger :
 'Lo, this thing, which I do nou hier,
 Schal ben in stede of thin ansuere ;
 And in this wise as I me bere,
 Thou schalt unto mi Sone telle.'
 And he no lengere wolde duelle,
 4662 ꝑc he AdBT

[TARQUIN AND HIS
SON ARUNS.]

Bot tok his leve and goth withal
 Unto his lord, and told him al,
 Hou that his fader hadde do.
 Whan Arrons herde him telle so, 4690
 Anon he wiste what it mente,
 And therto sette al his entente,
 Til he thurgh fraude and tricherie
 The Princes hefdes of Gabie
 Hath smiten of, and al was wonne:
 His fader cam tofore the Sonne
 Into the toun with the Romeins,
 And tok and slowh the citezeins
 Withoute reson or pite,
 That he ne spareth no degre. 4700
 And for the sped of this conqueste
 He let do make a riche feste (4900*)
 With a sollempne Sacrifise P. iii. 250
 In Phebus temple; and in this wise
 Whan the Romeins assembled were,
 In presence of hem alle there,
 Upon thalter whan al was diht
 And that the fyres were alyht,
 From under thalter sodeinly
 An hidous Serpent openly 4710
 Cam out and hath devoured al
 The Sacrifice, and ek withal
 The fyres queynt, and forth anon,
 So as he cam, so is he gon
 Into the depe ground ayein.
 And every man began to sein,
 'Ha lord, what mai this signefic?'
 And therupon thei preie and crie
 To Phebus, that thei mihten knowe
 The cause: and he the same throwe 4720
 With gastly vois, that alle it herde,
 The Romeins in this wise ansuerde,
 And seide hou for the wikkidnesse
 Of Pride and of unrihtwinesse,
 That Tarquin and his Sone hath do,
 4688 told C, SB, F tolde A

[TARQUIN AND HIS
SON ARUNS.]

The Sacrifice is wasted so,
 Which myhte nocht ben acceptable
 Upon such Senne abhominable,
 And over that yit he hem wisseth,
 And seith that which of hem ferst kisseth 4730
 His moder, he schal take wrieche
 Upon the wrong: and of that speche
 Thei ben withinne here hertes glade, P. iii. 251
 Thogh thei outward no semblant made.
 Ther was a knyht which Brutus hihte,
 And he with al the haste he myhte
 To grounde fell and therthe kiste,
 Bot non of hem the cause wiste,
 Bot wenden that he hadde sporned
 Per chance, and so was overturned. 4740
 Bot Brutus al an other mente;
 For he knew wel in his entente
 Hou therthe of every mannes kinde
 Is Moder: bot thei weren blinde,
 And sihen nocht so fer as he.
 Bot whan thei leften the Cite
 And comen hom to Rome ayein,
 Thanne every man which was Romein
 And moder hath, to hire he bende
 And keste, and ech of hem thus wende 4750
 To be the ferste upon the chance,
 Of Tarquin forto do vengeance, (4950*)
 So as thei herden Phebus sein.

Bot every time hath his certein,
 So moste it nedes thanne abide,
 Til afterward upon a tyde
 Tarquinus made unskillfully
 A werre, which was fasteby
 Ayein a toun with walles stronge
 Which Ardea was cleped longe,
 And caste a Siege theraboutte,
 That ther mai noman passen oute.

[THE RAPE OF
LUCRECE.]

Hic narrat quod,
 cum Tarquinus in ob-
 sidione Ciuitatis Ar-
 dee, ut eam destrueret,
 intentus fuit, Arrons
 filius eius Romam se-
 creto adiens in domo
 Collatini hospitatus
 est; vbi de nocte illam

4737 ground F therthe] per he AdBT pere (per) H.YXGERC, A
 4746 the] jat S . . . A 4754 Paragraph in MSS. at 4757

[THE RAPE OF
LUCRECE.]castissimam dominam
Lucreciam ymaginata
fraude vi oppressit :
vnde illa pre dolore
mortua, ipse cum Tar-
quino patre suo tota
conclamante Roma in
perpetuum exilium
delegati sunt.

So it befell upon a nyht, P. iii. 252
 Arrons, which hadde his souper diht,
 A part of the chivalerie
 With him to soupe in compaignie
 Hath bede: and whan thei comen were
 And seten at the souper there,
 Among here othre wordes glade
 Arrons a gret spekinge made, 4770
 Who hadde tho the beste wif
 Of Rome: and ther began a strif,
 For Arrons seith he hath the beste.
 So jangle thei withoute reste,
 Til ate laste on Collatin,
 A worthi knyht, and was cousin
 To Arrons, seide him in this wise:
 'It is,' quod he, 'of non emprise
 To speke a word, bot of the dede,
 Therof it is to taken hiede. 4780
 Anon forthi this same tyde
 Lep on thin hors and let ous ryde:
 So mai we knowe bothe tuo
 Unwarli what oure wyves do,
 And that schal be a trewe assay.'
 This Arrons seith nocht ones nay:
 On horse bak anon thei lepte
 In such manere, and nothing slepte,
 Ridende forth til that thei come
 Al prively withinne Rome; 4790
 In strange place and doun thei lihte,
 And take a chambre, and out of sihte
 Thei be disguised for a throwe, P. iii. 253
 So that no lif hem scholde knowe.
 And to the paleis ferst thei soghte,
 To se what thing this ladi wroghte
 Of which Arrons made his avant:
 And thei hire sihe of glad semblant,
 Al full of merthes and of bordes;
 Bot among alle hire othre wordes 4800

4772 ther] þus B 4780 Wher of (Wherof) AdBT, K 4795
 the om. A 4796 þis ladyes B þeis ladiis Ad þise lady (s erased) T

[THE RAPE OF
LUCRECE.]

Sche spak nocht of hire housebonde.
 And whan thei hadde al understonde (5000*)
 Of thilke place what hem liste,
 Thei gon hem forth, that non it wiste,
 Beside thilke gate of bras,
 Collacea which cleped was,
 Wher Collatin hath his duellinge.
 Ther founden thei at hom sittinge
 Lucrece his wif, al environed 4810
 With wommen, whiche are abandoned
 To werche, and sche wroghte ek withal,
 And bad hem haste, and seith, 'It schal
 Be for mi housebondes were,
 Which with his swerd and with his spere
 Lith at the Siege in gret desese.
 And if it scholde him nocht displese,
 Nou wolde god I hadde him hiere;
 For certes til that I mai hiere
 Som good tidinge of his astat,
 Min herte is evere upon debat. 4820
 For so as alle men witnessse,
 He is of such an hardiesse,
 That he can nocht himselve spare, P. iii. 254
 And that is al my moste care,
 Whan thei the walles schulle assaile.
 Bot if mi wissches myhte availe,
 I wolde it were a groundles pct,
 Be so the Siege were unknet,
 And I myn housebonde sihe.'
 With that the water in hire yhe 4830
 Aros, that sche ne myhte it stoppe,
 And as men sen the dew bedroppe
 The leves and the floures eke,
 Riht so upon hire whyte cheke
 The wofull salte teres felle.
 Whan Collatin hath herd hire telle
 The menyng of hire trewe herte,

4803 him AXGCR 4810 were X, AdBT 4812 seide B
 4814 swerd] schield (shelde) H1, B 4825 schulde (scholde) M,
 AdBT 4832 dewe droppe AM, W
 * * * * *
 b b

[THE RAPE OF
LUCRECE.]

Anon with that to hire he sterre,
 And seide, 'Lo, mi goode diere,
 Nou is he come to you hiere, 4840
 That ye most loven, as ye sein.'
 And sche with goodly chiere ayein
 Beclipte him in hire armes smale,
 And the colour, which erst was pale,
 To Beaute thanne was restored,
 So that it myhte nought be mored.
 The kinges Sone, which was nyh,
 And of this lady herde and syh
 The thinges as thei ben befalle,
 The resoun of hise wittes alle 4850
 Hath lost; for love upon his part
 Cam thanne, and of his fyr dart (5050*)
 With such a wounde him hath thurghsmite, P. iii. 255
 That he mot nedes fiele and wite
 Of thilke blinde maladie,
 To which no cure of Surgerie
 Can helpe. Bot yit natheles
 At thilke time he hield his pes,
 That he no contenance made,
 Bot openly with wordes glade, 4860
 So as he couthe in his manere,
 He spak and made frendly chiere,
 Til it was time forto go.
 And Collatin with him also
 His leve tok, so that be nyhte
 With al the haste that thei myhte
 Thei riden to the Siege ayein.
 Bot Arrons was so wo besein
 With thoughtes whiche upon him runne,
 That he al be the brode Sunne 4870
 To bedde goth, nought forto reste,
 Bot forto thenre upon the beste
 And the faireste forth withal,
 That evere he syh or evere schal,
 So as him thoghte in his corage,
 Where he pourtreieth hire ymage:
 Ferst the fetures of hir face,

[THE RAPE OF
LUCRECE.]

In which nature hadde alle grace
 Of wommanly beaute beset,
 So that it myhte nought be bet; 4880
 And hou hir yelwe her was tresced
 And hire atir so wel adresced,
 And hou sche spak, and hou sche wroghte, P. iii. 256
 And hou sche wepte, al this he thoghte,
 That he foryeten hath no del,
 Bot al it liketh him so wel,
 That in the word nor in the dede
 Hire lacketh nought of wommanhiede.
 And thus this tyrannysse knyht
 Was soupled, bot nought half ariht, 4890
 For he non other hiede tok,
 Bot that he myhte be som crok,
 Althogh it were ayein hire wille,
 The lustes of his fleissch fulfille;
 Which love was nought resonable,
 For where honour is remuable,
 It oghte wel to ben avised.
 Bot he, which hath his lust assised
 With melled love and tirannie,
 Hath founde upon his tricherie 4900
 A weie which he thenkth to holde,
 And seith, 'Fortune unto the bolde
 Is favorable forto helpe.' (5100*) Audaces fortuna in-
 nat.
 And thus withinne himself to yelpe,
 As he which was a wylde man,
 Upon his treson he began:
 And up he sterre, and forth he wente
 On horsebak, bot his entente
 Ther knew no wiht, and thus he nam
 The nexte weie, til he cam 4910
 Unto Collacea the gate
 Of Rome, and it was somdiel late,
 Riht eveue upon the Sonne set, P. iii. 257
 As he which hadde schape his net
 Hire innocence to betrappe.

4880 let GEC, AdBT 4881 hir om. B her. c) H.XR 4886 liked
 SAdBT 4887 in the dede] in dede ANXLB: 4914 And he AdBT

[THE RAPE OF
LUCRECE.]

And as it scholde tho mishappe,
 Als priveliche as evere he myhte
 He rod, and of his hors alyhte
 Tofore Collatines In,
 And al frendliche he goth him in, 4920
 As he that was cousin of house.
 And sche, which is the goode spouse,
 Lucrece, whan that sche him sih,
 With goodli chiere drowh him nyh,
 As sche which al honour supposeth,
 And him, so as sche dar, opposeth
 Hou it stod of hire housebonde.
 And he tho dede hire understonde
 With tales feigned in his wise,
 Riht as he wolde himself devise, 4930
 Wherof he myhte hire herte glade,
 That sche the betre chiere made,
 Whan sche the glade wordes herde,
 Hou that hire housebonde ferde.
 And thus the trouthe was deceived
 With slih tresoun, which was received
 To hire which mente alle goode;
 For as the festes thanne stode,
 His Souper was ryht wel arraied,
 Bot yit he hath no word assaied 4940
 To speke of love in no degre;
 Bot with covert soubtilite
 His frendly speches he affaiteth, P. iii. 258
 And as the Tigre his time awaiteth
 In hope forto cacche his preie.
 Whan that the bordes were aweie
 And thei have souped in the halle,
 He seith that slep is on him falle,
 And preith he moste go to bedde;
 And sche with alle haste spedde, 4950
 So as hire thoghte it was to done,
 That every thing was redi sone. (5150*)
 Sche broghte him to his chambre tho

4918 he lighte AdBT 4920 he om. AdBT 4929 jir wise
 AdBT 4940 he om. AM 4944 the om. AM a Hi

[THE RAPE OF
LUCRECE.]

And tok hire leve, and forth is go
 Into hire oghne chambre by,
 As sche that wende certainly
 Have had a frend, and hadde a fo,
 Wherof fell after mochel wo.
 This tirant, thogh he lyhe softe,
 Out of his bed aros fulofte, 4950
 And goth aboute, and leide his Ere
 To herkne, til that alle were
 To bedde gon and slepten faste.
 And thanne upon himself he caste
 A mantell, and his swerd al naked
 He tok in honde; and sche unwaked
 Abedde lay, but what sche mette,
 God wot; for he the Dore unschette
 So prively that non it herde,
 The softe pas and forth he ferde 4970
 Unto the bed wher that sche slepte,
 Al sodeinliche and in he crepte,
 And hire in bothe his Armes tok. P. iii. 259
 With that this worthi wif awok,
 Which thurgh tendresce of wommanhiede
 Hire vois hath lost for pure drede,
 That o word speke sche ne dar:
 And ek he bad hir to be war,
 For if sche made noise or cry,
 He seide, his swerd lay faste by 4980
 To sien hire and hire folk aboute.
 And thus he broghte hire herte in doute,
 That lich a Lomb whanne it is sesed
 In wolves mouth, so was desesed
 Lucrece, which he naked fond:
 Wherof sche swounede in his hond,
 And, as who seith, lay ded oppressed.
 And he, which al him hadde adressed
 To lust, tok thanne what him liste,
 And goth his wey, that non it wiste, 4990
 Into his oghne chambre ayein,
 And clepede up his chamberlein,

4971 In to AdBT

[THE RAPE OF
LUCRECE.]

And made him redi forto ryde.
 And thus this lecherouse pride
 To horse lepte and forth he rod;
 And sche, which in hire bed abod,
 Whan that sche wiste he was agon,
 Sche clepede after liht anon
 And up aros long er the day,
 And caste away hire freissh aray, 5000
 As sche which hath the world forsake,
 And tok upon the clothes blake: (5200*)
 And evere upon continuinge, P. iii. 260
 Riht as men sen a welle springe,
 With yhen fulle of wofull teres,
 Hire her hangende aboute hire Eres,
 Sche wepte, and noman wiste why.
 Bot yit among full pitously
 Sche preide that thei nolden drecche
 Hire housebonde forto fecche 5010
 Forth with hire fader ek also.
 Thus be thei comen bothe tuo,
 And Brutus cam with Collatin,
 Which to Lucrece was cousin,
 And in thei wenten alle thre
 To chambre, wher thei myhten se
 The wofulleste upon this Molde,
 Which wepte as sche to water scholde.
 The chambre Dore anon was stoke, 5020
 Er thei have oght unto hire spoke;
 Thei sihe hire clothes al disguised,
 And hou sche hath himself despised,
 Hire her hangende unkemd aboute,
 Bot natheles sche gan to loute
 And knele unto hire housebonde;
 And he, which fain wolde understonde
 The cause why sche ferde so,
 With softe wordes axeth tho,
 'What mai you be, mi goode swete?'
 And sche, which thoghte herself unmete 5030
 And the lest worth of wommen alle,
 Hire wofull chiere let doun falle

[THE RAPE OF
LUCRECE.]

For schame and couthe unnethes loke. P. iii. 261
 And thei therof good hiede toke,
 And preiden hire in alle weie
 That sche ne spare forto seie
 Unto hir frendes what hire eileth,
 Why sche so sore himself beweileth,
 And what the sothe wolde mene.
 And sche, which hath hire sorwes grene, 5040
 Hire wo to telle thanne assaieth,
 Bot tendre schame hire word delaieth,
 That sondri times as sche minte
 To speke, upon the point sche stinte.
 And thei hire bidden evere in on
 To telle forth, and therupon,
 Whan that sche sih sche moste nede,
 Hire tale betwen schame and drede
 Sche tolde, noght withoute peine.
 And he, which wolde hire wo restreigne, 5050
 Hire housebonde, a sory man,
 Conforteth hire al that he can, (5250*)
 And swor, and ek hire fader bothe,
 That thei with hire be noght wrothe
 Of that is don ayein hire wille;
 And preiden hire to be stille,
 For thei to hire have al foryive.
 Bot sche, which thoghte noght to live,
 Of hem wol no foryivenesse, 5060
 And seide, of thilke wickednesse
 Which was unto hire bodi wroght,
 Al were it so sche myhte it noght,
 Nevere afterward the world ne schal P. iii. 262
 Reproeven hire; and forth withal,
 Er eny man therof be war,
 A naked swerd, the which sche bar
 Withinne hire Mantel priveli,
 Betwen hire hondes sodeinly
 Sche tok, and thurgh hire herte it throng,
 And fell to grounde, and evere among, 5070
 Whan that sche fell, so as sche myhte,
 5043 f. minte . . . stinte J, SB, F mente . . . stente AEC

[THE RAPE OF
LUCRECE.]

Hire clothes with hire hand sche rihte,
That noman downward fro the kne
Scholde eny thing of hire se:
Thus lay this wif honestely,
Although she deide wofully.

Tho was no sorwe forto seke:
Hire housebonde, hire fader eke
Aswoune upon the bodi felle;
Ther mai no mannes tunge telle
In which anguisshe that thei were. 5080
Bot Brutus, which was with hem there,
Toward himself his herte kepte,
And to Lucrece anon he lepte,
The blodi swerd and pulleth oute,
And swor the goddes al aboute
That he therof schal do vengeance.
And sche tho made a contenance,
Hire dedlich yhe and ate laste
In thonkinge as it were up caste, 5090
And so behield him in the wise,
Whil sche to loke mai suffise.

And Brutus with a manlich herte P. iii. 263
Hire housebonde hath mad up sterre
Forth with hire fader ek also
In alle haste, and seide hem tho
That thei anon withoute lette
A Beere for the body fette;
Lucrece and therupon bledende
He leide, and so forth out criende 5100
He goth into the Market place
Of Rome: and in a litel space (5300*)
Thurgh cry the cite was assembled,
And every mannes herte is trembled,
Whan thei the sothe herde of the cas.
And therupon the conseil was
Take of the grete and of the smale,
And Brutus tolde hem al the tale;
And thus cam into remembrance

5101 vnto X . . . B₉ 5104 mannes herte trembled H₁ . . . B₁, W
manne herte trembled AM

Of Senne the continuance,
Which Arrons hadde do tofore,
And ek, long time er he was bore,
Of that his fadre hadde do
The wrong cam into place tho;
So that the comun clamour tolde
The newe schame of Sennes olde.
And al the toun began to crie,
'Awey, awey the tirannie
Of lecherie and cōvoitise!' 5110
And ate laste in such a wise 5120
The fader in the same while
Forth with his Sone thei exile,
And taken betre governance. P. iii. 264
Bot yit an other remembrance
That rihtwisenesse and lecherie
Acorden nocht in compaignie
With him that hath the lawe on honde,
That mai a man wel understonde,
As be a tale thou shalt wite,
Of olde ensample as it is write. 5130

At Rome whan that Apius,
Whos other name is Claudius,
Was governour of the cite,
Ther fell a wonder thing to se
Touchende a gentil Maide, as thus,
Whom Livius Virginius
Begeten hadde upon his wif:
Men seiden that so fair a lif
As sche was nocht in al the toun.
This fame, which goth up and down, 5140
To Claudius cam in his Ere,
Wherof his thought anon was there,
Which al his herte hath set afyre,
That he began the flour desire
Which longeth unto maydenhede,

5113 fadre S, F fader AJC, B 5130 olde ensample C, F old
(oold) ensample AJ, B olde ensamples SΔ 5133 margin super
eodem om. B 5135 and }us FWKMagd 5140 margin tunc
om. BT

5110 [THE RAPE OF
LUCRECE.]

[TALE OF VIRGINIA.]

Hic ponit exemplum
super eodem, qualiter
Luius Virginius dux
exercitus Romano-
rum vnicam filiam pul-
cherimam habens cum
quodam nobili viro
nomine Ilicio, vt ip-
sam in vxorem duce-
ret, finaliter concorda-
uit. Set interim Ap-
pius Claudius tunc Im-
perator virginis formo-
sitate, vt eam vio-
laret, concupiscens,
occasiones quibus ma-
trimonium impedire,
ipsamque ad sui vsus
apprehendere posset,

[TALE OF VIRGINIA.]
 subdola conspiracione
 fieri coniectavit. Et
 cum propositum sui
 desiderii productis fal-
 sis testibus in iudicio
 Imperator habere de-
 buisset, pater tunc ibi-
 dem presens extracto
 gladio filie sue pectus
 mortali vulnere per
 medium transfodit, di-
 cens: 'Malo michi de
 filia mea virginem ha-
 bere mortuam, quam
 in suis scandalum mere-
 tricem reseruare vi-
 ventem.'

And sende, if that he myhte spede
 The blinde lustes of his wille.
 Bot that thing mai he nocht fulfille,
 For sche stod upon Mariage;
 A worthi kniht of gret lignage, 5150
 Illicius which thanne hihte,
 Acorded in hire fader sihte (5350*)
 Was, that he scholde his douhter wedde. P.iii. 265
 Bot er the cause fully spedde,
 Hire fader, which in Romanie
 The ledinge of chivalerie
 In governance hath undertake,
 Upon a werre which was take
 Goth out with al the strengthe he hadde
 Of men of Armes whiche he ladde: 5160
 So was the mariage left,
 And stod upon acord til eft.
 The king, which herde telle of this,
 Hou that this Maide ordeigned is
 To Mariage, thoghte an other.
 And hadde thilke time a brother,
 Which Marchus Claudius was hote,
 And was a man of such riote
 Riht as the king himselve was:
 Thei tuo togedre upon this cas 5170
 In conseil founden out this weie,
 That Marchus Claudius schal seie
 Hou sche be weie of covenant
 To his service appourtenant
 Was hol, and to non other man;
 And therupon he seith he can
 In every point witesse take,
 So that sche schal it nocht forsake.
 Whan that thei hadden schape so,
 After the lawe which was tho, 5180
 Whil that hir fader was absent,
 Sche was somouned and assent
 To come in presence of the king P. iii. 266

5161 þis Mariage SBTΔ 5171 þe weie GBs, S...Δ 5182
 somouned (or sommouned) AJ, F somoned C, SB

And stonde in ansuere of this thing.
 Hire frendes wisten alle wel
 That it was falshed everydel,
 And comen to the king and seiden,
 Upon the comun lawe and preiden,
 So as this noble worthi knyht
 Hir fader for the comun riht 5190
 In thilke time, as was befalle,
 Lai for the profit of hem alle
 Upon the wylde felde armed,
 That he ne scholde nocht ben harmed
 Ne schamed, whil that he were oute;
 And thus thei preiden al aboute.
 For al the clamour that he herde,
 The king upon his lust ansuerde,
 And yaf hem only daies tuo 5200
 Of respit; for he wende tho,
 That in so schorte a time appiere
 Hire fader mihte in no manere. (5400*)
 Bot as therof he was deceived;
 For Livius hadde al conceived
 The pourpos of the king tofore,
 So that to Rome ayein therfore
 In alle haste he cam ridende,
 And lefte upon the field liggende
 His host, til that he come ayein. 5210
 And thus this worthi capitein
 Appiereth redi at his day,
 Wher al that evere reson may
 Be lawe in audience he doth, P. iii. 267
 So that his dowhter upon soth
 Of that Marchus hire hadde accused
 He hath tofore the court excused.
 The king, which sih his pourpos faile,
 And that no sleihte mihte availe,
 Encombred of his lustes blinde
 The lawe torneth out of kinde, 5220

5184 stood (stode) H...Bs stante W 5201 schorte J, S, F
 schort AC, B 5206 And þoughte to be þer þerfore H...Bs
 5220 torned AM...Bs

[TALE OF VIRGINIA.]

And half in wraththe as thogh it were,
 In presence of hem alle there
 Deceived of concupiscence
 Yaf for his brother the sentence,
 And bad him that he scholde sese
 This Maide and make him wel at ese;
 Bot al withinne his oghne entente
 He wiste hou that the cause wente,
 Of that his brother hath the wyte
 He was himselven forto wyte. 5230
 Bot thus this maiden hadde wrong,
 Which was upon the king along,
 Bot ayein him was non Appel,
 And that the fader wiste wel:
 Wherof upon the tirannie,
 That for the lust of Lecherie
 His douhter scholde be deceived,
 And that Ilcius was weyved
 Untrewly fro the Mariage,
 Riht as a Leon in his rage, 5240
 Which of no drede set acompte
 And not what pite scholde amounte,
 A naked swerd he pulleth oute, P. iii. 268
 The which amonges al the route
 He threste thurgh his dowhter side,
 And al alowd this word he cride:
 'Lo, take hire ther, thou wrongfull king,
 For me is levere upon this thing
 To be the fader of a Maide,
 Thogh sche be ded, than if men saide 5250
 That in hir lif sche were schamed
 And I therof were evele named.' (5450*)
 Tho bad the king men scholde areste
 His bodi, bot of thilke heste,
 Lich to the chaced wylde bor,
 The houndes whan he fieleth sor,
 Tothroweth and goth forth his weie,
 In such a wise forto seie

5239 fro] for J, AdBT
 5251 aschamed ALM, Δ

5247 take (taake) AC, S, F tak J, B

[TALE OF VIRGINIA.]

This worthi kniht with swerd on honde
 His weie made, and thei him wonde, 5260
 That non of hem his strokes kepte;
 And thus upon his hors he lepte,
 And with his swerd droppende of blod,
 The whch withinne his douhter stod,
 He cam ther as the pouer was
 Of Rome, and tolde hem al the cas,
 And seide hem that thei myhten liere
 Upon the wrong of his matiere,
 That betre it were to redresce
 At hom the grete unrihtwisnesse, 5270
 Than forto werre in strange place
 And lese at hom here oghne grace.
 For thus stant every mannes lif P. iii. 269
 In jeupartie for his wif
 Or for his dowhter, if thei be
 Passende an other of beaute.
 Of this merveile which thei sihe
 So apparant tofore here yhe,
 Of that the king him hath misbore,
 Here othes thei have alle swore 5280
 That thei wol stonde be the riht.
 And thus of on acord upriht
 To Rome at ones hom ayein
 Thei torne, and schortly forto sein,
 This tirannye cam to mouthe,
 And every man seith what he couthe,
 So that the prive tricherie,
 Which set was upon lecherie,
 Cam openly to mannes Ere;
 And that broghte in the comun feere, 5290
 That every man the peril dradde
 Of him that so hem overladde.
 Forthi, er that it worse falle,
 Thurgh comun conseil of hem alle

5263 Al with . . . of blood T Al wiþ . . . al blod B Wiþ . . . al
 blode Ad 5267 seide AJ, SB seid F 5268 þis AMB,
 5275 And for AdBT Or of W 5279 haþ him AM, W 5293
 for þey B

[TALE OF VIRGINIA.]

Thei have here wrongfull king deposed,
 And hem in whom it was supposed
 The conseil stod of his ledinge
 Be lawe unto the dom thei bringe,
 Wher thei receiven the penance
 That longeth to such governance. 5300
 And thus thunchaste was chastised,
 Wherof thei myhte ben avised (5500*)
 That scholden afterward governe, P. iii. 270
 And be this evidence lerne,
 Hou it is good a king eschue
 The lust of vice and vertu suie.

[TOBIAS AND SARA.]

Hic inter alia castitatis regimen concernencia loquitur quomodo Matrimonium, cuius status Sacramentum, quasi continenciam equiperans, etiam honeste delectationis regimine moderari debet. Et narrat in exemplum, qualiter pro eo quod illi vii. viri, qui Sarre Raguclis filie magis propter concupiscenciam quam propter matrimonium voluptuose nupserunt, vnus post alium omnes prima nocte a demone Asmodeo singillatim iugulati interierunt.

To make an ende in this partie,
 Which toucheth to the Policie
 Of Chastite in special,
 As for conclusion final 5310
 That every lust is to eschue
 Be gret ensample I mai argue:
 Hou in Rages a toun of Mede
 Ther was a Mayde, and as I rede,
 Sarra sche hihte, and Raguel
 Hir fader was; and so befell,
 Of bodi bothe and of visage
 Was non so fair of the lignage,
 To seche among hem alle, as sche; 5320
 Wherof the riche of the cite,
 Of lusti folk that couden love,
 Assoted were upon hire love,
 And asken hire forto wedde.
 On was which ate laste spedde,
 Bot that was more for likinge,
 To have his lust, than for weddinge,
 As he withinne his herte caste,
 Which him repenteth ate laste.
 For so it fell the ferste nyht,
 That whanne he was to bedde dyht, 5330
 As he which nothing god besecheth
 Bot al only hise lustes secheth,

5327 withinne] which in AdBT

Abedde er he was fully warm P. iii. 271 [TOBIAS AND SARA.]
 And wolde have take hire in his Arm,
 Asmod, which was a fend of helle,
 And serveth, as the bokes telle,
 To tempte a man of such a wise,
 Was redy there, and thilke emprise,
 Which he hath set upon delit,
 He vengeth thanne in such a plit, 5340
 That he his necke hath writhe atuo.
 This yonge wif was sory tho,
 Which wiste nothing what it mente;
 And natheles yit thus it wente
 Noght only of this ferste man,
 Bot after, riht as he began,
 Sexe othre of hire housebondes
 Asmod hath take into hise bondes,
 So that thei alle abedde deiden, 5350
 Whan thei her hand toward hir leiden,
 Noght for the lawe of Mariage,
 Bot for that ilke fyrige rage (5550*)
 In which that thei the lawe excede:
 For who that wolde taken hiede
 What after fell in this matiere,
 Ther mihte he wel the sothe hie.
 Whan sche was wedded to Thobie,
 And Raphael in compainie
 Hath tawht him hou to ben honeste,
 Asmod wan noght at thilke feste, 5360
 And yit Thobie his wille hadde;
 For he his lust so goodly ladde,
 That bothe lawe and kinde is served, P. iii. 272
 Wherof he hath himself preserved,
 That he fell noght in the sentence.
 O which an open evidence
 Of this ensample a man mai se,
 That whan likinge in the degre

5336 serued B 5337 in such CRBs 5341 wriþe AJC, SB
 wriþ F 5345 of] for AdBT 5348 hise bondes J, S, FK
 his bondes H: . . . B, AdTBΔ, WMagd bondes (om. his) AM
 5366 Of which AdBT, W O such H:

[CHASTITY.]

Of Mariage mai forsueie,
Wel oghte him thanne in other weie 5370
Of lust to be the betre avised.

For god the lawes hath assised
Als wel to reson as to kinde,
Bot he the bestes wolde binde
Only to lawes of nature,
Bot to the mannes creature
God yaf him reson forth withal,
Wherof that he nature schal
Upon the causes modiefie,

Nota.

That he schal do no lecherie, 5380
And yit he schal hise lustes have.

So ben the lawes bothe save
And every thing put out of sclandre ;
As whilom to king Alisandre
The wise Philosophre tawhte,
Whan he his ferste lore cawhte,
Noght only upon chastete,
Bot upon alle honestete ;
Wherof a king himself mai taste,
Hou trewe, hou large, hou joust, hou chaste 5390

Him oghte of reson forto be,
Forth with the vertu of Pite,
Thurgh which he mai gret thonk deserve P. iii. 273
Toward his godd, that he preserve
Him and his poeple in alle welthe
Of pes, richesse, honour and helthe
Hier in this world and elles eke.

Confessor.

Mi Sone, as we tofore spieke
In schrifte, so as thou me seidest,
And for thin ese, as thou me preidest, 5400
Thi love throgthes forto lisse,
That I thee wolde telle and wisse (5600*)
The forme of Aristotles lore,
I have it seid, and somdiel more
Of othre ensamples, to assaie
If I thi peines myhte allaie

5379 cause AdBT 5380 marg. Nota A, F om. C, B 5383 put AJ,
SB pit F 5388 honeste Hi . . . Bs, Δ, WF 5392 the om. AM

[CHASTITY.]

Amans.

Thurgh eny thing that I can seie.

Do wey, mi fader, I you preie :

Of that ye have unto me told

I thonke you a thousandfold. 5410

The tales sounen in myn Ere,

Bot yit myn herte is elleswhere,

I mai miselve noght restreigne,

That I nam evere in loves peine :

Such lore couthe I nevere gete,

Which myhte make me foryete

O point, bot if so were I slepte,

That I my tydes ay ne kepte

To thenke of love and of his lawe ;

That herte can I noght withdrawe. 5420

Forthi, my goode fader diere,

Lef al and speke of my matiere

Touchende of love, as we begonne : P. iii. 274

If that ther be oght overronne

Or oght foryete or left behinde

Which falleth unto loves kinde,

Wherof it nedeth to be schrive,

Nou axeth, so that whil I live

I myhte amende that is mys.

Mi goode diere Sone, yis.

Thi schrifte forto make plein,

Ther is yit more forto sein

Of love which is unavised.

Bot for thou schalt be wel avised

Unto thi schrifte as it belongeth,

A point which upon love hongeth

And is the laste of alle tho,

I wol thee telle, and thanne ho.

5430

Confessor

Explicit Liber Septimus.

5407 which I AdBT 5411 sounen F 5417 S has lost two
leaves (5417—viii. 336) 5422 al om. Hi . . . Bs, AdBT 5426 in
to (into) AMB.

Incipit Liber Octavus.

- [LECHERY.] i. *Que fauet ad vicium vetus hec modo regula confert, P. iii. 275*
Nec nouus econtra qui docet ordo placet.
Cecus amor dudum nondum sua lumina cepit,
Quo Venus impositum deuia fallit iter.

Postquam ad instanciam Amantis confessi Confessor Genius super hiis que Aristoteles Regem Alexandrum edocuit, vna cum aliarum Cronicarum exemplis seriose tractauit, iam vltimo in isto octauo volumine ad confessionem in amoris causa regrediens tractare proponit super hoc, quod nonnulli primordia nature ad libitum voluptuose consequentes, nullo humane rationis arbitrio seu ecclesie legum impositione a suis excessibus debite refrenantur. Vnde quatenus amorem concernit Amantis conscienciam pro finali sue confessionis materia Genius rimari conatur.

THE myhti god, which unbegunne
 Stant of himself and hath begunne
 Alle othre thinges at his wille,
 The hevene him liste to fulfille
 Of alle joie, where as he
 Sit inthronized in his See,
 And hath hise Angles him to serve,
 Suche as him liketh to preserve,
 So that thei mowe nocht forsueie :
 Bot Lucifer he putte aweie, 10
 With al the route apostazied
 Of hem that ben to him allied,
 Whiche out of hevene into the helle
 From Angles into fendes felle ;
 Wher that ther is no joie of lyht,
 Bot more derk than eny nyht
 The peine schal ben endeles ; P. iii. 276
 And yit of fyres natheles
 Ther is plente, bot thei ben blake,
 Wherof no syhte mai be take. 20
 Thus whan the thinges ben befalle,
 That Luciferes court was falle
 Wher dedly Pride hem hath conveied,
 Anon forthwith it was pourveied
 Thurgh him which alle thinges may ;

13 the om. AM . . . B₂, AdBTAA, W

[THE ORIGIN OF
 MANKIND.]

He made Adam the sexte day
 In Paradis, and to his make
 Him liketh Eve also to make,
 And bad hem cresce and multiplie.
 For of the mannes Progenie, 30
 Which of the womman schal be bore,
 The nombre of Angles which was lore,
 Whan thei out fro the blisse felle,
 He thoghte to restore, and felle
 In hevene thilke holy place
 Which stod tho voide upon his grace.
 Bot as it is wel wiste and knowe,
 Adam and Eve bot a throwe,
 So as it scholde of hem betyde,
 In Paradis at thilke tyde 40
 Ne duelten, and the cause why,
 Write in the bok of Genesi,
 As who seith, alle men have herd,
 Hou Raphael the fyrer swerd
 In honde tok and drof hem oute,
 To gete here lyves fode aboute
 Upon this wofull Erthe hiere. P. iii. 277
 Metodre seith to this matiere,
 As he be revelacion
 It hadde upon avision, 50
 Hou that Adam and Eve also
 Virgines comen bothe tuo
 Into the world and were aschamed,
 Til that nature hem hath reclaimed
 To love, and tauht hem thilke lore,
 That ferst thei keste, and overmore
 Thei don that is to kinde due,
 Wherof thei hadden fair issue.
 A Sone was the ferste of alle,
 And Chain be name thei him calle ; 60
 Abel was after the secounde,
 And in the geste as it is founde,
 Nature so the cause ladde,

37 wiste AJ, F wist C, B 48 his A 60 Cham AJ
 Chaym (Caym) Hi . . . B₂, AdBT, W

[LAWS OF MARRIAGE.]

Tuo douhtres ek Dame Eve hadde,
 The ferste cleped Calmana
 Was, and that other Delbora.
 Thus was mankinde to beginne;
 Forthi that time it was no Sinne
 The Soster forto take hire brother,
 Whan that ther was of chois non other: 70
 To Chain was Calmana betake,
 And Delboram hath Abel take,
 In whom was gete natheles
 Of worldes folk the ferste encres.
 Men sein that nede hath no lawe,
 And so it was be thilke dawe
 And laste into the Secounde Age, P. iii. 278
 Til that the grete water rage,
 Of Noë which was seid the flod,
 The world, which thanne in Senne stod, 80
 Hath dreint, outake lyves Eyhte.
 Tho was mankinde of litel weyhte;
 Sem, Cham, Japhet, of these thre,
 That ben the Sones of Noë,
 The world of mannes nacion
 Into multiplicacion
 Was tho restored newe ayein
 So ferforth, as the bokes sein,
 That of hem thre and here issue
 Ther was so large a retenue, 90
 Of naciouns seventy and tuo;
 In sondri place ech on of tho
 The wyde world have enhabited.
 Bot as nature hem hath excited,
 Thei token thanne litel hiede,
 The brother of the Sosterhiede
 To wedde wyves, til it cam
 Into the time of Habraham.
 Whan the thridde Age was begunne,
 The nede tho was overrunne, 100

71 Cham AJM Chaym (Caym) H1 . . . B1, AdBT, W 72 Delbora
 H1 . . . B1 (Debora E), Δ, W 77 into A, FW vnto CLB1, B 79
 the om. A 98 Habraham J, FK rest Abraham 100 was jo AML

[LAWS OF MARRIAGE.]

For ther was poeple ynouh in londe:
 Thanne ate ferste it cam to honde,
 That Sosterhode of mariage
 Was torned into cousinage,
 So that after the rihte lynce
 The Cousin weddeth the cousine.
 For Habraham, er that he deide, P. iii. 279
 This charge upon his servant leide,
 To him and in this wise spak,
 That he his Sone Isaac 110
 Do wedde for no worldes good,
 Bot only to his oghne blod:
 Wherof this Servant, as he bad,
 Whan he was ded, his Sone hath lad
 To Bathuel, wher he Rebecke
 Hath wedded with the whyte necke;
 For sche, he wiste wel and syh,
 Was to the child cousine nyh.
 And thus as Habraham hath tawht,
 Whan Isaac was god betawht, 120
 His Sone Jacob dede also,
 And of Laban the dowhtres tuo,
 Which was his Em, he tok to wyve,
 And gat upon hem in his lyve,
 Of hire ferst which hihte Lie,
 Sex Sones of his Progenie,
 And of Rachel tuo Sones eke:
 The remenant was forto seke,
 That is to sein of foure mo,
 Wherof he gat on Bala tuo, 130
 And of Zelpha he hadde ek tweie.
 And these tuelve, as I thee seie,
 Thurgh providence of god himselve
 Ben seid the Patriarkes tuelve;
 Of whom, as afterward befell,
 The tribes tuelve of Irahel
 Engendred were, and ben the same P. iii. 280
 That of Hebreus tho hadden name,
 Which of Sibrede in alliance

136 tribus MH1CB1, TΔ, W Irahel (Israel) J, FK rest Israel

[LAWS OF MARRIAGE.]

For evere kepten thilke usance 140
 Most comunly, til Crist was bore.
 Bot afterward it was forbore
 Amonges ous that ben baptized;
 For of the lawe canonized
 The Pope hath bede to the men,
 That non schal wedden of his ken
 Ne the seconde ne the thridde.
 Bot thogh that holy cherche it bidde,
 So to restreigne Mariage,
 Ther ben yit upon loves Rage 150
 Full manye of suche nou aday
 That taken wher thei take may.
 For love, which is unbesein
 Of alle reson, as men sein,
 Thurgh sotie and thurgh nycete,
 Of his voluptuosite
 He spareth no condicion
 Of ken ne yit religion,
 Bot as a cock among the Hennes,
 Or as a Stalon in the Fennes, 160
 Which goth amonges al the Stod,
 Riht so can he nomore good,
 Bot takth what thing comth next to honde.
 Mi Sone, thou schalt understonde,
 That such delit is forto blame.
 Forthi if thou hast be the same
 To love in eny such manere, P. iii. 281
 Tell forth therof and schrif thee hiere.

Confessor.

Amans.

145 bode Hi . . . B₂, AdBT 148 it om. GC, BA 170 in such
 AdBTA 177 I myhte AM

[LAWS OF MARRIAGE.]

So therof sette I non acompte.
 Ye mai wel axe of this and that,
 Bot sothli forto telle plat, 180
 In al this world ther is bot on
 The which myn herte hath overgon;
 I am toward alle othre fre.
 Full wel, mi Sone, nou I see
 Thi word stant evere upon o place,
 Bot yit therof thou hast a grace,
 That thou thee myht so wel excuse
 Of love such as som men use,
 So as I spak of now tofore.
 For al such time of love is lore, 190
 And lich unto the bitterswete;
 For thogh it thenke a man ferst swete,
 He schal wel fielen ate laste
 That it is sour and may nocht laste.
 For as a morsell envenimed,
 So hath such love his lust mistimed,
 And grete ensamples manyon P. iii. 282
 A man mai finde therupon.

Confessor.

At Rome ferst if we beginne,
 Ther schal I finde hou of this sinne 200
 An Emperour was forto blame,
 Gayus Caligula be name,
 Which of his oghne Sostres thre
 Berefte the virginite:
 And whanne he hadde hem so forlein,
 As he the which was al vilein,
 He dede hem out of londe exile.
 Bot afterward withinne a while
 God hath beraft him in his ire
 His lif and ek his large empire: 210
 And thus for likinge of a throwe
 For evere his lust was overthrowe.
 Of this sotie also I finde,

[EXAMPLES OF INCEST.
CALIGULA.]

200

210

Hic loquitur contra illos, quos Venus sui desiderii feruore inflammans ita incestuosos efficit, ut neque propriis Sororibus parcunt. Et narrat exemplum, qualiter pro eo quod Gayus Caligula tres sorores suas virgines coitu illicito oppressit, deus tanti sceleris peccatum impune non ferens, ipsum non solum ab imperio set a vita iusticia vindice priuauit. Narrat etiam aliud

185 The AM, W 188 such AJ, B suche F 205 so
 om. AdBT 210 margin impune om. BT, W inpunitum E
 212 margin priuauit] priuauit Hi . . . B₂

[AMMON.]

exemplum super eodem, qualiter Amon filius Dauid fatui amoris concupiscencia preuentus, sororem suam Thamar a sue virginitatis pudicia inuitam deflorauit, propter quod et ipse a fratre suo Absolone postea interfectus, peccatum sue mortis precio inuitus redemit.

[LOT AND HIS DAUGHTERS.]

Hic narrat, qualiter Loth duas filias suas ipsis consencientibus carnali copula cognouit, duosque ex eis filios, scilicet Moab et Amon, progenit, quorum postea generacio praua et exasperans contra populum dei in terra saltim promissionis vario grauamine quam sepius insultabat.

Confessor.

Amon his Soster ayein kinde,
Which hihte Thamar, he forlay ;
Bot he that lust an other day
Aboghte, whan that Absolon
His oghne brother therupon,
Of that he hadde his Soster schent,
Tok of that Senne vengeance 220
And slowh him with his oghne hond :
And thus thunkinde unkinde fond.

And forto se more of this thing,
The bible makth a knowieching,
Wherof thou miht take evidence
Upon the sothe experience.
Whan Lothes wif was overgon P. iii. 283
And schape into the salte Ston,
As it is spoke into this day,
Be bothe hise dowhtres thanne he lay, 230
With childe and made hem bothe grete,
Til that nature hem wolde lete,
And so the cause aboute ladde
That ech of hem a Sone hadde,
Moab the ferste, and the seconde
Amon, of whiche, as it is founde,
Cam afterward to gret ences
Tuo nacions : and natheles,
For that the stockes were ungoode,
The branches mihten nocht be goode ; 240
For of the false Moabites
Forth with the strengthe of Amonites,
Of that thei weren ferst misgete,
The poeple of god was ofte upsete
In Irahel and in Judee,
As in the bible a man mai se.
Lo thus, my Sone, as I thee scie,
Thou miht thiselue be beseie
Of that thou hast of othre herd :

228 vnto MCL, BT 231 and made] he made AM . . . B₁,
AdTB 237 gret AC, B grete F 239 not (nought) goode
AM . . . B₁, AdBT 245 Irahel as in l. 136

For evere yit it hath so ferd, 250 [INCEST.]
Of loves lust if so befall
That it in other place falle
Than it is of the lawe set,
He which his love hath so beset
Mote afterward repente him sore.
And every man is othres lore ;
Of that befell in time er this P. iii. 284
The present time which now is
May ben enformed hou it stod, 260
And take that him thenketh good,
And leue that which is nocht so.
Bot forto loke of time go,
Hou lust of love exceedeth lawe,
It oghte forto be withdrawe ;
For every man it scholde drede,
And nameliche in his Sibrede,
Which torneth ofte to vengeance :
Wherof a tale in remembrance,
Which is a long process to hier, 270
I thenke forto tellen hier.

ii. *Omnibus est communis amor, set et immoderatos
Qui facit excessus, non reputatur amans.
Sors tamen unde Venus attractat corda, videre
Que rationis erunt, non ratione sinit.*

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

Of a Cronique in daies gon,
The which is cleped Pantheon,
In loves cause I rede thus,
Hou that the grete Antiochus,
Of whom that Antioche tok
His ferste name, as seith the bok,
Was coupled to a noble queene,
And hadde a dowhter hem betwene :
Bot such fortune cam to honde, 280
That deth, which no king mai withstonde,
Bot every lif it mote obeie,
This worthi queene tok aweie.

Hic loquitur adhuc contra incestuosos amantum coitus. Et narrat mirabile exemplum de magno Rege Antiocho, qui vxore mortua propriam filiam violauit : et quia filie Matrimonium penes alios impedire uoluit, tale ab eo exit edictum, quod si quis eam in vxorem peteret, nisi ipse prius quoddam problema questionis, quam ipse Rex proposuerat, veraciter

257 And jat AdBT 262 ago AM . . . B₁, AdBT 280 margin
ipse prius FK, om. A . . . B₁, BT (Lat. om. AdΔ, W)

[APOLLONIUS OF TYRE.]

solueret, capitali sententia puniretur. Super quo veniens tandem discretus iuuenis princeps Tyri Appolinus questionem soluit; nec tamen filiam habere potuit, set Rex indignatus ipsum propter hoc in mortis odium recollegit. Vnde Appolinus a facie Regis fugiens, quamplura, prout inferius intulatur, propter amorem pericula passus est.

The king, which made mochel mone, P. iii. 285
 Tho stod, as who seith, al him one
 Withoute wif, bot natheles
 His doghter, which was piereles
 Of beaute, duelte aboute him stille.
 Bot whanne a man hath welthe at wille,
 The fleissh is frele and falleth ofte,
 And that this maide tendre and softe, 290
 Which in hire fadres chambres duelte,
 Withinne a time wiste and felte:
 For likinge and concupiscence
 Withoute insihte of conscience
 The fader so with lustes blente,
 That he caste al his hole entente
 His oghne doghter forto spille.
 This king hath leisir at his wille
 With strengthe, and whanne he time sih,
 This yonge maiden he forlih: 300
 And sche was tendre and full of drede,
 Sche couthe noght hir Maidenhede
 Defende, and thus sche hath forlore
 The flour which sche hath longe bore.
 It helpeth noght although sche wepe,
 For thei that scholde hir bodi kepe
 Of wommen were absent as thanne;
 And thus this maiden goth to manne,
 The wylde fader thus devoureth
 His oghne fleissh, which non socoureth, 310
 And that was cause of mochel care.
 Bot after this unkinde fare
 Out of the chambre goth the king, P. iii. 286
 And sche lay stille, and of this thing,
 Withinne hirsself such sorghe made,
 Ther was no wiht that mihte hir glade,
 For feere of thilke horrible vice.
 With that cam inne the Norrice
 Which fro childhode hire hadde kept,

291 chambre (chamber) MH, XEC, AdBT, WK 293 and] of
 AM . . . B, AdBT 298 The king H . . . B, AdBT 310
 which om. B

320 [APOLLONIUS OF TYRE.]

And axeth if sche hadde slept,
 And why hire chiere was unglad.
 Bot sche, which hath ben overlad
 Of that sche myhte noght be wreke,
 For schame couthe unethes speke;
 And natheles mercy sche preide
 With wepende yhe and thus sche seide:
 'Helas, mi Soster, waileway,
 That evere I sih this ilke day!
 Thing which mi bodi ferst begat
 Into this world, onliche that 330
 Mi worldes worschipe hath bereft.'
 With that sche swouneth now and est,
 And evere wissbeth after deth,
 So that welnyh hire lacketh breth.
 That other, which hire wordes herde,
 In confortinge of hire ansuerde,
 To lette hire fadres fol desir
 Sche wiste no recoverir:
 Whan thing is do, ther is no bote,
 So suffren thei that suffre mote; 340
 Ther was non other which it wiste.
 Thus hath this king al that him liste
 Of his likinge and his plesance, P. iii. 287
 And laste in such continuance,
 And such delit he tok therinne,
 Him thoghte that it was no Sinne;
 And sche dorste him nothing withseie.
 Bot fame, which goth every weie,
 To sondry regnes al aboute
 The grete beaute telleth oute 350
 Of such a maide of hih parage:
 So that for love of mariage
 The worthi Princes come and sende,
 As thei the whiche al honour wende,
 And knewe nothing hou it stod.
 The fader, whanne he understod,
 That thei his dowhter thus besoghte,

337 S resumes 354 the om. AdBT, W 355 how jat
 H . . . B, AdB

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

With al his wit he caste and thoghte
 Hou that he myhte finde a lette;
 And such a Statut thanne he sette, 360
 And in this wise his lawe he taxeth,
 That what man that his doghter axeth,
 Bot if he couthe his question
 Assoile upon suggestion
 Of certein thinges that befelle,
 The whiche he wolde unto him telle,
 He scholde in certein lese his hed.
 And thus ther weren manye ded,
 Here hevedes stondende on the gate,
 Till ate laste longe and late, 370
 For lacke of ansuere in the wise,
 The remenant that weren wise
 Eschueden to make assay. P. iii. 288

Til it befell upon a day
 Appolinus the Prince of Tyr,
 Which hath to love a gret desir,
 As he which in his hihe mod
 Was likende of his hote blod,
 A yong, a freissh, a lusti knyht,
 As he lai musende on a nyht 380
 Of the tidinges whiche he herde,
 He thoghte assaie hou that it ferde.
 He was with worthi compainie
 Arraied, and with good navie
 To schipe he goth, the wynd him dryveth,
 And seileth, til that he arryveth:
 Sauf in the port of Antioche
 He londeth, and goth to aproche
 The kinges Court and his presence.
 Of every naturel science, 390
 Which eny clerk him couthe teche,
 He couthe ynowh, and in his speche
 Of wordes he was eloquent;
 And whanne he sih the king present,
 He preith he moste his dowhter have.

358 soghte (soughte) A . . . CB₂, SAdTB (In al wise he him be
 powt Δ) 362 that om. BTA, W 371 his wise EB₂, BΔ

De aduentu Appol-
 ini in Antiochiam, vbi
 ipse filiam Regis An-
 tiochi in vxorem pos-
 tulauit.

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

The king ayein began to crave,
 And tolde him the condicion,
 Hou ferst unto his question
 He mote ansuere and faile nocht,
 Or with his heved it schal be boght: 400
 And he him axeth what it was.

The king declareth him the cas
 With sturne lok and sturdi chiere, P. iii. 289
 To him and seide in this manere:
 'With felonie I am upbore,
 I ete and have it nocht forbore
 Mi modres fleissh, whos housebonde
 Mi fader forto seche I fonde,
 Which is the Sone ek of my wif.
 Hierof I am inquisitif; 410
 And who that can mi tale save,
 Al quyt he schal my doghter have;
 Of his ansuere and if he faile,
 He schal be ded withoute faile.
 Forthi my Sone,' quod the king,
 'Be wel avised of this thing,
 Which hath thi lif in jeupartie.'

Appolinus for his partie,
 Whan he this question hath herd,
 Unto the king he hath ansuerd
 And hath rehersed on and on
 The pointz, and seide therupon:
 'The question which thou hast spoke,
 If thou wolt that it be unloke,
 It toucheth al the privete
 Between thin oghne child and thee,
 And stant al hol upon you tuo.'

The king was wonder sory tho,
 And thoghte, if that he seide it oute,
 Than were he schamed al aboute.
 With slihe wordes and with felle
 He seith, 'Mi Sone, I schal thee telle,

403 sturne F sterne A, SB lok] word B 416 of of F
 119 this] at AdBT the B₂ 428 margin Indignacio—Appolini
 m. SΔ (as also the marginal notes following down to l. 1020)

Questio Regis An-
 tiochi.

Scelere vehor, ma-
 terna carne vescor,
 quero patrem meum,
 matris mee virum, vx-
 oris mee filium.

Responsio Appol-
 lini.

Indignacio Antiochi
 super responsione Ap-
 polini.

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

Though that thou be of litel wit, P. iii. 290
It is no gret merveile as yit,
Thin age mai it noght suffise:
Bot loke wel thou noght despise
Thin oghne lif, for of my grace
Of thretty daies fulle a space
I grante thee, to ben avised.'

De recessu Appol-
lini ab Antiochia.

And thus with leve and time assised 440
This yonge Prince forth he wente,
And understod wel what it mente,
Withinne his herte as he was lered,
That forto maken him afered
The king his time hath so deslaied.
Wherof he dradde and was esmaied,
Of treson that he deie scholde,
For he the king his sothe tolde;
And sodeinly the nyhtes tyde, 450
That more wolde he noght abide,
Al prively his barge he hente
And hom ayein to Tyr he wente:
And in his oghne wit he seide
For drede, if he the king bewreide,
He knew so wel the kinges herte,
That deth ne scholde he noght asterolde,
The king him wolde so poursuie.
Bot he, that wolde his deth eschuie,
And knew al this tofor the hond, 460
Forsake he thoghte his oghne lond,
That there wolde he noght abyde;
For wel he knew that on som syde
This tirant of his felonie P. iii. 291
Be som manere of tricherie
To grieve his bodi wol noght leve.
Forthi withoute take leve,
Als priveliche as evere he myhte,
He goth him to the See be nyhte
In Schipes that be whete laden:

De fuga Appolini
per mare a Regno suo.

443 his om. B 446 esmaied JEC, S, FK amaied (amayed)
AMH, XGRLB, AdBT dismaied Δ, W 462 tyde AMX, W
467 margin mare om. F as evere he] as he H, . . . B, Ad as }cy BT
469 In] Her(e) AdBTA be] ben wi] AdBTAΔ, W

470 [APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

Here takel redy tho thei maden
And hale up Seil and forth thei fare.
Bot forto tellen of the care
That thei of Tyr begonne tho,
Whan that thei wiste he was ago,
It is a Pite forto hier.
They losten lust, they losten chiere,
Thei toke upon hem such penaunce,
Ther was no song, ther was no daunce,
Bot every merthe and melodie 480
To hem was thanne a maladie;
For unlust of that aventure
Ther was noman which tok tonsure,
In doelful clothes thei hem clothe,
The bathes and the Stwes bothe
Thei schetten in be every weie;
There was no lif which leste pleie
Ne take of eny joie kepe,
Bot for here liege lord to wepe;
And every wyht seide as he couthe,
'Helas, the lusti flour of youthe, 490
Our Prince, oure heved, our governour,
Thurgh whom we stoden in honour,
Withoute the comun assent P. iii. 292
Thus sodeinliche is fro ous went!'
Such was the clamour of hem alle.
Bot se we now what is befall
Upon the ferste tale plein,
And torne we therto ayein.
Antiochus the grete Sire,
Which full of rancour and of ire
His herte berth, so as ye herde,
Of that this Prince of Tyr ansuerde,
He hadde a feloun bacheler,
Which was his prive consailer,
And Taliart be name he hihte:

Nota qualiter Thaliartus Miles, vt Appolinum veneno intoxicaret, ab Antiocho in Tyrum missus, ipso ibidem non inuento 500 Antiochiam rediit.

471 hale up] hale] AM . . . B, AdBTA 483 deelful (deleful)
AML, W deedful (dedful) H, . . . CB, AdTA dedly B 492
stonden B, AdBTA, WK 496 margin Nota om. A . . . B, BT
(Lat. om. SAdΔ) 505 Taliart F Thaliart AJ, SB

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

The king a strong puison him dihte
 Withinne a buiste and gold therto,
 In alle haste and bad him go
 Strawht unto Tyr, and for no cost
 Ne spare he, til he hadde lost 510
 The Prince which he woide spille.
 And whan the king hath seid his wille,
 This Taliart in a Galeie
 With alle haste he tok his weie :
 The wynd was good, he saileth blyve,
 Til he tok lond upon the ryve
 Of Tyr, and forth with al anon
 Into the Burgh he gan to gon,
 And tok his In and bod a throwe.
 Bot for he wolde nocht be knowe, 520
 Desguised thanne he goth him oute ;
 He sih the wepinge al aboute,
 And axeth what the cause was, P. iii. 293
 And thei him tolden al the cas,
 How sodeinli the Prince is go.
 And whan he sih that it was so,
 And that his labour was in vein,
 Anon he torneth hom ayein,
 And to the king, whan he cam nyh,
 He tolde of that he herde and syh, 530
 Hou that the Prince of Tyr is fled,
 So was he come ayein unsped.
 The king was sori for a while,
 Bot whan he sih that with no wyle
 He myhte achieve his cruale,
 He stinte his wraththe and let him be.
 Bot over this now forto telle
 Of adventures that befelle
 Unto this Prince of whom I tolde,
 He hath his rihte cours forth holde 540
 Be Ston and nedle, til he cam
 To Tharse, and there his lond he nam.
 A Burgeis riche of gold and fee

507 box AM . . . B₂, AdBT 510 spare he FK rest spare
 513 Taliart J, F Thaliart A, SB 535 He] His F 539 which B

Qualiter Appolinus
 in portu Tharsis appli-
 cuit, ubi in hospicio
 cuiusdam magni viri
 nomine Strangulionis
 hospitatus est.

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

Was thilke time in that cite,
 Which cleped was Strangulio,
 His wif was Dionise also :
 This yonge Prince, as seith the bok,
 With hem his herbergage tok ;
 And it befell that Cite so
 Before time and thanne also, 550
 Thurgh strong famyne which hem ladde
 Was non that eny whetè hadde.
 Appolinus, whan that he herde P. iii. 294
 The meschief, hou the cite ferde,
 Al freliche of his oghne yifte
 His whete, among hem forto schifte,
 The which be Schipe he hadde broght,
 He yaf, and tok of hem riht nocht.
 Bot sithen ferst this world began,
 Was nevere yit to such a man 560
 Mor joie mad than thei him made :
 For thei were alle of him so glade,
 That thei for evere in remembrance
 Made a figure in resemblance
 Of him, and in the comun place
 Thei sette him up, so that his face
 Mihte every maner man beholde,
 So as the cite was beholde ;
 It was of latoun overgilt :
 Thus hath he nocht his yifte spilt. 570
 Upon a time with his route
 This lord to pleie goth him oute,
 And in his weie of Tyr he mette
 A man, the which on knees him grette,
 And Hellican be name he hihte,
 Which preide his lord to have insihte
 Upon himself, and seide him thus,
 Hou that the grete Antiochus

548 him H₁, AdBT 553 whan (when) AJC, B whanne S, F
 565 the om. AMH.XRL, Ad a B 566 him FWK it ACLB₂, B
 568 So as] So]at AM . . . B₂ (So as G) 571 a route AM . . .
 B₂, AdBT 573 margin prenucliauit B preminuit M 574
 the which on knees] which on his knees E, B which on knees
 H.XRLB₂, AdTA

Qualiter Hellicanus
 cuius Tyri Tharsim ve-
 niens Appolinum de
 insidiis Antiochi pre-
 munuit.

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

Awaiteth if he mihte him spille.
That other thoghte and hield him stille, 580
And thonked him of his warnynge,
And bad him telle no tidinge,
Whan he to Tyr cam hom ayein, P. iii. 295
That he in Tharse him hadde sein.

Qualiter Appolinus portum Tharsis relinquens, cum ipse per mare nauigio securiorum quesuit, superueniente tempestate nauis cum omnibus preter ipsum solum in eadem contentis iuxta Pentapolim periclitabatur.

Fortune hath evere be muable
And mai no while stonde stable:
For now it hiheth, now it loweth,
Now stant upriht, now overthroweth,
Now full of blisse and now of bale, 590
As in the tellinge of mi tale
Hieraftward a man mai liere,
Which is gret routhe forto hier.
This lord, which wolde don his beste,
Withinne himself hath litel reste,
And thoghte he wolde his place change
And seche a contre more strange.
Of Tharsiens his leve anon
He tok, and is to Schipe gon:
His cours he nam with Seil updrawe,
Where as fortune doth the lawe, 600
And scheweth, as I schal reherse,
How sche was to this lord diverse,
The which upon the See sche ferketh.
The wynd aros, the weder derketh,
It blew and made such tempeste,
Non ancher mai the schip areste,
Which hath tobroke al his gere;
The Schipmen stode in such a feere,
Was non that myhte himself bestere,
Bot evere awaite upon the lere, 610
Whan that thei scholde drenche at ones.
Ther was ynowh withinne wones
Of wepinge and of sorghe tho; P. iii. 296
This yonge king makth mochel wo
So forto se the Schip travaile:
Bot al that myhte him nocht availe;

582 no] for no H;E . . . B₁ 590 As in telling(e) AM, AdT
ffor as in telling(e) H₁ . . . B₂ 598 ygon B

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

The mast tobrak, the Seil torof,
The Schip upon the wawes drof,
Til that thei sihe a londes cooste. 620
Tho made avou the leste and moste,
Be so thei myhten come alonde;
Bot he which hath the See on honde,
Neptunus, wolde nocht acorde,
Bot altobroke cable and corde,
Er thei to londe myhte aproche,
The Schip toclef upon a roche,
And al goth doun into the depe.
Bot he that alle thing mai kepe
Unto this lord was merciabe,
And broghte him sauf upon a table, 630
Which to the lond him hath upbore;
The remenant was al forlore,
Wherof he made mochel mone.
Thus was this yonge lord him one,
Al naked in a povere plit:
His colour, which whilom was whyt,
Was thanne of water fade and pale,
And ek he was so sore acale
That he wiste of himself no bote,
It halp him nothing forto mote 640
To gete ayein that he hath lore.
Bot sche which hath his deth forbore,
Fortune, thogh sche wol nocht yelpe, P. iii. 297
Al sodeinly hath sent him helpe,
Whanne him thoghte alle grace aweie;
Ther cam a Fisshere in the weie,
And sih a man ther naked stonde,
And whan that he hath understonde
The cause, he hath of him gret routhe,
And onliche of his povere trouthe 650
Of suche clothes as he hadde
With gret Pite this lord he cladde.

Qualiter Appolinus nudus super litus iactabatur, vbi quidam piscator ipsum suo colloquio vestiens ad urbem Pentapolim direxit.

620 avou (avow) A, B, F a vow (a vou) J, S, K 624 altobroke
A, S, F al tobroke C, B al to broke J 633 Therof (Ther of)
A . . . B₂, AdBT Wherefore W 635 a om. AMR 636 was
whilom AM . . . B₁, AdBT was som tyme J

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

And he him thonketh as he scholde,
 And seith him that it schal be yolde,
 If evere he gete his stat ayein,
 And preide that he wolde him sein
 If nyh were eny toun for him.
 He seide, 'Yee, Pentapolim,
 Wher bothe king and queene duellen.'
 Whanne he this tale herde tellen,
 He gladeth him and gan beseche
 That he the weie him wolde teche:
 And he him taghte; and forth he wente
 And preide god with good entente
 To sende him joie after his sorwe.

660

It was nocht passed yit Midmorwe,
 Whan thiderward his weie he nam,
 Wher sone upon the Non he cam.
 He eet such as he myhte gete,
 And forth anon, whan he hadde ete,
 He goth to se the toun aboute,
 And cam ther as he fond a route
 Of yonge lusti men withalle;
 And as it scholde tho befalle,
 That day was set of such assisse,
 That thei scholde in the londes guise,
 As he herde of the poeple seie,
 Here comun game thanne pleie;
 And crid was that thei scholden come
 Unto the gamen alle and some
 Of hem that ben deliverre and wyhte,
 To do such maistrie as thei myhte.
 Thei made hem naked as thei scholde,
 For so that ilke game wolde,
 As it was tho custume and us,
 Amonges hem was no refus:
 The flour of al the toun was there
 And of the court also ther were,
 And that was in a large place

670

P. iii. 298

680

667 Than (Thanne) AM . . . Bz, AdBT afterward B 677 As
 was herd AdBT 680 game MHs, AdBTΔ, W gamis X 685
 As] And AM . . . Bz, AdBT tho] þe Hs . . . Bz, AdBT, WK om. Δ

690 [APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

Riht evene afore the kinges face,
 Which Artestrathes thanne hihte.
 The pley was pleid riht in his sihte,
 And who most worthi was of dede
 Receiue he scholde a certein mede
 And in the cite bere a pris.
 Appolinus, which war and wys
 Of every game couthe an ende,
 He thoughte assaie, hou so it wende,
 And fell among hem into game:
 And there he wan him such a name,
 So as the king himself acompteth
 That he alle othre men surmonteth,
 And bar the pris above hem alle. P. iii. 299
 The king bad that into his halle
 At Souper time he schal be broght;
 And he cam thanne and lefte it nocht,
 Withoute compaignie al one:
 Was non so semlich of persone,
 Of visage and of limes bothe,
 If that he hadde what to clothe.
 At Soupertime natheles
 The king amiddes al the pres
 Let clepe him up among hem alle,
 And bad his Mareschall of halle
 To setten him in such degre
 That he upon him myhte se.
 The king was sone set and served,
 And he, which hath his pris deserved
 After the kinges oghne word,
 Was mad beginne a Middel bord,
 That bothe king and queene him siht.
 He sat and caste aboute his yhe
 And sih the lordes in astat,
 And with himself wax in debat
 Thinkende what he hadde lore,

700

710

720

697 margin aula A . . . Bz, BT 705 schulde (scholde)
 AdBT, W 714 his Mareschal of h. J, S, FK his Marchal
 of his h. AM . . . CBz, BT his marschal of the h. Δ, W þe Marchal
 of his h. Ad (ll. 704-714 om. L) 718 hadde B

Qualiter Appolinus
 ludum gignasii vincens
 in aulam Regis ad ce-
 nam honorifice recep-
 tus est.

Qualiter Appolino
 Pentapolim adueni-
 ente ludus Gignasii
 per vrbem publice pro-
 clamatus est.

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

Qualiter Appolinus
in cena recumbens
nichil comedit, set do-
loroso vultu, submisso
capite, ingemiscebat;
qui tandem a filia
Regis confortatus cy-
tharam plectens cunc-
tis audientibus citha-
risando vitramodum
complacuit.

And such a sorwe he tok therfore,
That he sat evere stille and thoghte,
As he which of no mete roghte.
The king behield his hevynesse,
And of his grete gentillesse 730
His doghter, which was fair and good
And ate bord before him stod,
As it was thilke time usage, P. iii. 300
He bad to gon on his message
And fonde forto make him glad.
And sche dede as hire fader bad,
And goth to him the softe pas
And axeth whenne and what he was,
And preith he scholde his thoghtes leve.
He seith, 'Ma Dame, be your leve 740
Mi name is hote Appolinus,
And of mi richesse it is thus,
Upon the See I have it lore.
The contre wher as I was bore,
Wher that my lond is and mi rente,
I lefte at Tyr, whan that I wente:
The worschipe of this worldes aghte,
Unto the god ther I betaghte.'
And thus togedre as thei tuo speeke,
The teres runne be his cheeke. 750
The king, which therof tok good kepe,
Hath gret Pite to sen him wepe,
And for his doghter sende ayein,
And preide hir faire and gan to sein
That sche no lengere wolde drecche,
Bot that sche wolde anon forth fecche
Hire harpe and don al that sche can
To glade with that sory man.
And sche to don hir fader heste 760
Hir harpe fette, and in the feste
Upon a Chaier which thei fette
Hirself next to this man sche sette:

732 *margin* maxime ingemiscebat A . . . B_s, BT (*Latin om.* SAdΔ)
747 of his worldes aghte J, SΔ, FWK þer of (þerof) which I aughte
AM . . . B_s, AdBT 748 I þer(e) H₁ . . . B_s, AdBT

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

With harpe bothe and ek with mouthe P. iii. 301
To him sche dede al that sche couthe
To make him chiere, and evere he siketh,
And sche him axeth hou him liketh.
'Ma dame, certes wel,' he seide,
'Bot if ye the mesure pleide
Which, if you list, I schal you liere,
It were a glad thing forto hiere.' 770
'Ha, lieve sire,' tho quod sche,
'Now tak the harpe and let me se
Of what mesure that ye mene.'
Tho preith the king, tho preith the queene,
Forth with the lordes alle arewe,
That he som merthe wolde schewe;
He takth the Harpe and in his wise
He tempreth, and of such assise
Singende he harpeth forth withal,
That as a vois celestial 780
Hem thoghte it souneth in here Ere,
As thogh that he an Angel were.
Thei gladen of his melodie,
Bot most of all the compainie
The kinges doghter, which it herde,
And thoghte ek hou that he ansuerde,
Whan that he was of hire opposed,
Withinne hir herte hath wel supposed
That he is of gret gentillesse.
Hise dedes ben therof witenesse 790
Forth with the wisdom of his lore;
It nedeth noght to seche more,
He myhte noght have such manere, P. iii. 302
Of gentil blod bot if he were.
Whanne he hath harped al his fille,
The kinges heste to fulfille,
Awey goth dissh, awey goth cuppe,
Doun goth the bord, the cloth was uppe,
Thei risen and gon out of halle.

772 taakþ (takeþ) AM 782 he] it AM . . . B_s, AdBT 786 hou
that] of þat AH₁ . . . B_s, AdBT þat M howe W 787 he was]
it was H₁ . . . B_s, AdBT

[APOLLONIUS OF TYRE.]

Qualiter Appolinus cum Rege pro filia sua erudienda retentus est.

The king his chamberlein let calle, 800
 And bad that he be alle weie
 A chambre for this man pourveic,
 Which nyh his oghne chambre be.
 'It schal be do, mi lord,' quod he.
 Appolinus of whom I mene
 Tho tok his leve of king and queene
 And of the worthi Maide also,
 Which preide unto hir fader tho,
 That sche myhte of that yonge man
 Of tho sciences whiche he can 810
 His lore have; and in this wise
 The king hir granteth his aprise,
 So that himself therto assente.
 Thus was acorded er thei wente,
 That he with al that evere he may
 This yonge faire freisshe May
 Of that he couthe scholde enforme;
 And full assented in this forme
 Thei token leve as for that nyht.

And whanne it was amorwe lyht, 820
 Unto this yonge man of Tyr
 Of clothes and of good atir
 With gold and Selver to despende P. iii. 303
 This worthi yonge lady sende:
 And thus sche made him wel at ese,
 And he with al that he can plese
 Hire serveth wel and faire ayein.
 He tawhte hir til sche was certain
 Of Harpe, of Citole and of Rote,
 With many a tun and many a note 830
 Upon Musique, upon mesure,
 And of hire Harpe the temprure
 He tawhte hire ek, as he wel couthe.
 Bot as men sein that frele is youthe,
 With leisir and continuance
 This Mayde fell upon a chance,

809 that] je Hi . . . B₁, AdBT 817 he scholde AdB 827
 Hire] He AdBT 829 of Citole] citole B and citole K 830 tun]
 time X, B

Qualiter filia Regis Appolinum ornato apparatu vestiri fecit, et ipse ad puelle doctrinam in quampluribus familiariter intendebat: vnde placata puella in amorem Appolini exardescens infirmabatur.

[APOLLONIUS OF TYRE.]

That love hath mad him a querele
 Ayein hire youthe freissch and frele,
 That maigre wher sche wole or noght,
 Sche mot with al hire hertes thoght 840
 To love and to his lawe obeie;
 And that sche schal ful sore abeie.
 For sche wot nevere what it is,
 Bot evere among sche fieleth this:
 Thenkende upon this man of Tyr,
 Hire herte is hot as eny fyr,
 And otherwhile it is acale;
 Now is sche red, nou is sche pale
 Riht after the condicion
 Of hire ymaginacion; 850
 Bot evere among hire thoghtes alle,
 Sche thoghte, what so mai befalle,
 Or that sche lawhe, or that sche wepe, P. iii. 304
 Sche wolde hire goode name kepe
 For feere of wommanysshe schame.
 Bot what in earnest and in game,
 Sche stant for love in such a plit,
 That sche hath lost al appetit
 Of mete, of drinke, of nyhtes reste,
 As sche that not what is the beste; 860
 Bot forto thenken al hir fille
 Sche hield hire ofte times stille
 Withinne hir chambre, and goth noght oute:
 The king was of hire lif in doute,
 Which wiste nothing what it mente.
 Bot fell a time, as he out wente
 To walke, of Princes Sones thre
 Ther come and felle to his kne;
 And ech of hem in sondri wise
 Besoghte and profreth his servise,
 So that he myhte his doghter have.
 The king, which wolde his honour save,

839 wolde AdBT 845 Touching(e) AM . . . B₁, AdBTA
 852 may so AMR 856 and in game] what in game ME, B and
 what in game CLB₁, AdT 859 and drinke MCL, BT of drinkyng W
 860 that om, AMH₁ 872 hir(e) honour AJH₁ . . . L, AdBT

Qualiter tres filii Principum filiam Regis singillatim in uxorem suis supplicacionibus postularunt.

870

CONFESSIO AMANTIS

Seith sche is siek, and of that speche
 Tho was no time to beseche;
 Bot ech of hem do make a bille
 He bad, and wryte his oghne wille,
 His name, his fader and his good;
 And whan sche wiste hou that it stod,
 And hadde here billes oversein,
 Thei scholden have ansuere ayein. 880
 Of this conseil thei weren glad,
 And wryten as the king hem bad,
 And every man his oghne bok P. iii. 305
 Into the kinges hond betok,
 And he it to his dowhter sende,
 And preide hir forto make an ende
 And wryte ayein hire oghne hond,
 Riht as sche in hire herte fond.
 The billes weren wel received,
 Bot sche hath alle here loves weyved, 890
 And thoghte tho was time and space
 To put hire in hir fader grace,
 And wrot ayein and thus sche saide:
 'The schame which is in a Maide
 With speche dar nocht ben unloke,
 Bot in wrytinge it mai be spoke;
 So wryte I to you, fader, thus:
 Bot if I have Appolinus,
 Of al this world, what so betyde, 900
 I wol non other man abide.
 And certes if I of him faile,
 I wot riht wel withoute faile
 Ye schull for me be dowhterles.
 This lettre cam, and ther was press
 Tofore the king, ther as he stod;
 And whan that he it understod,
 He yaf hem ansuer by and by,
 Bot that was do so prively,
 That non of othres conseil wiste.
 Thei toke her leve, and wher hem liste 910
 Thei wente forth upon here weie.

875 to make AdBT 892 put AJ, S, F putte C, B

Qualiter filia Regis
 omnibus aliis relictis
 Appolinum in maritum
 preelegit.

The king ne wolde nocht bewreie
 The conseil for no maner hihe, P. iii. 306
 Bot soffreth til he time sihe:
 And whan that he to chambre is come,
 He hath unto his conseil nome
 This man of Tyr, and let him se
 The lettre and al the privete,
 The which his dowhter to him sente:
 And he his kne to grounde bente 920
 And thonketh him and hire also,
 And er thei wenten thanne atuo,
 With good herte and with good corage
 Of full Love and full mariage
 The king and he ben hol acorded.
 And after, whanne it was recorded
 Unto the dowhter hou it stod,
 The yifte of al this worldes good
 Ne scholde have mad hir half so blythe:
 And forth withal the king als swithe, 930
 For he wol have hire good assent,
 Hath for the queene hir moder sent.
 The queene is come, and whan sche herde
 Of this matiere hou that it ferde,
 Sche syh debat, sche syh desese,
 Bot if sche wolde hir dowhter plese,
 And is therto assented full.
 Which is a dede wonderfull,
 For noman knew the sothe cas
 Bot he himself, what man he was; 940
 And natheles, so as hem thoghte,
 Hise dedes to the sothe wroghte
 That he was come of gentil blod: P. iii. 307
 Him lacketh nocht bot worldes good,
 And as therof is no despeir,
 For sche schal ben hire fader heir,
 And he was able to governe.
 Thus wol thei nocht the love werne
 Of him and hire in none wise,

928 ꝑc worldes A... B₂, AdT 946 fadres (faders) AM... B₂
 (except E), AdΔ

[APOLLONIUS OF TYRE.]

Qualiter Appolinus filie Regis nupsit, et prima nocte cum ea concubiens ipsam impregnauit.

Bot ther acorded thei diuise 950
 The day and time of Mariage.
 Wher love is lord of the corage,
 Him thinketh longe er that he spede ;
 Bot ate laste unto the dede
 The time is come, and in her wise
 With gret offrende and sacrificise
 Thei wedde and make a riche feste,
 And every thing which was honeste
 Withinnen house and ek withoute
 It was so don, that al aboute 960
 Of gret worschipe, of gret noblesse
 Ther cride many a man largesse
 Unto the lordes hihe and loude ;
 The knyhtes that ben yonge and proude,
 Thei jouste ferst and after daunce.
 The day is go, the nyhtes chaunce
 Hath derked al the bryhte Sonne ;
 This lord, which hath his love wonne,
 Is go to bedde with his wif, 970
 Wher as thei ladde a lusti lif,
 And that was after somdel sene,
 For as thei pleiden hem betwene,
 Thei gete a child betwen hem tuo, P. iii. 308
 To whom fell after mochel wo.
 Now have I told of the spousailes.
 Bot forto speke of the mervailles
 Whiche afterward to hem befelle,
 It is a wonder forto telle.
 It fell adai thei riden oute, 980
 The king and queene and al the route,
 To pleien hem upon the stronde,
 Wher as thei sen toward the londe
 A Schip sailende of gret array.
 To knowe what it mene may,

950 *Paragraph here F* ther] al (alle) AM . . . Bz, AdBT
 958 which was] at was W was Ad was riht AM . . . Bz, BT
 961 and gret AMH:E . . . Bz, BT and of gret X 962 many man
 AH:EC, AdBT many men X 970 lede B 975 spousales FK
 979 adai (aday) J, F a dai (a day) AC, SB

[APOLLONIUS OF TYRE.]

Til it be come thei abide ;
 Than sen thei stonde on every side,
 Endlong the schipes bord to schewe,
 Of Penonceals a riche rewe.
 Thei axen when the schip is come :
 Fro Tyr, anon ansuerde some, 990
 And over this thei seiden more
 The cause why thei comen fore
 Was forto seche and forto finde
 Appolinus, which was of kinde
 Her liege lord : and he appiereth,
 And of the tale which he hiereth
 He was riht glad ; for thei him tolde,
 That for vengeance, as god it wolde,
 Antiochus, as men mai wite,
 With thondre and lythnyng is forsmite ; 1000
 His doghter hath the same chaunce,
 So be thei bothe in o balance.
 'Forthi, oure liege lord, we seie P. iii. 309
 In name of al the lond, and preie,
 That left al other thing to done,
 It like you to come sone
 And se youre oghne liege men
 With othre that ben of youre ken,
 That live in longinge and desir
 Til ye be come ayein to Tyr.' 1010
 This tale after the king it hadde
 Pentapolim al overspradde,
 Ther was no joie forto seche ;
 For every man it hadde in speche
 And seiden alle of on acord,
 'A worthi king schal ben oure lord :
 That thoghte ous ferst an hevinesse
 Is schape ous now to gret gladnesse.'
 Thus goth the tidinge overal.
 Bot nede he mot, that nede schal : 1020
 Appolinus his leve tok,
 To god and al the lond betok

994 was FWK is A . . . Bz, S . . . A 1000 forto smyte AM
 1009 llien in AH: . . . Bz, AdBTΔ

1020 Qualiter Appolino cum vxore sua impregnata a Pentapoli versus Tyrum nauiganti-

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

bus, contigit vxorem,
mortis articulo angus-
tiam, in nauis filiam,
que postea Thaisis
vocabatur, parere.

With al the poeple long and brod,
That he no lenger there abod.
The king and queene sorwe made,
Bot yit somdiel thei weren glade
Of such thing as thei herden tho:
And thus between the wel and wo
To schip he goth, his wif with childe,
The which was evere meke and mylde 1030
And wolde nocht departe him fro,
Such love was between hem tuo.
Lichorida for hire office P. iii. 310
Was take, which was a Norrice,
To wende with this yonge wif,
To whom was schape a woful lif.
Withinne a time, as it betidde,
Whan thei were in the See amide,
Out of the North they sihe a cloude;
The storm aros, the wyndes loude 1040
Thei blewen many a dredful blast,
The welkne was al overcast,
The derke nyht the Sonne hath under,
Ther was a gret tempeste of thunder:
The Mone and ek the Sterres bothe
In blake cloudes thei hem clothe,
Wherof here brihte lok thei hyde.
This yonge ladi wepte and cride,
To whom no confort myhte availe;
Of childe sche began travaile, 1050
Wher sche lay in a Caban clos;
Hire woful lord fro hire aros,
And that was longe er eny morwe,
So that in anguisse and in sorwe
Sche was delivered al be nyhte
And ded in every mannes syhte;
Bot natheles for al this wo
A maide child was bore tho.
Appolinus whan he this knew,
For sorwe a swoune he overthrew, 1060

1024 lengerr F 1047 here (her) AC, SB hire J, F 1056
deide AdBT 1060 a swoune JC, SB, F aswoune A

Qualiter Appolinus
vxoris sue mortem
plaxit.

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

That noman wiste in him no lif.
And whanne he wok, he seide, 'Ha, wif,
Mi lust, mi joie, my desir, P. iii. 311
Mi welthe and my recoverir,
Why schal I live, and thou schalt dye?
Ha, thou fortune, I thee deffie,
Nou hast thou do to me thi werste.
Ha, herte, why ne wolt thou berste,
That forth with hire I myhte passe?
Mi peines weren wel the lasse.' 1070
In such wepinge and in such cry
His dede wif, which lay him by,
A thousand sithes he hire kiste;
Was nevere man that sih ne wiste
A sorwe unto his sorwe lich;
For evere among upon the lich
He fell swounende, as he that soghte
His oghne deth, which he besoghte
Unto the goddes alle above
With many a pitous word of love; 1080
Bot suche wordes as tho were
Yit herde nevere mannes Ere,
Bot only thilke whiche he seide.
The Maister Schipman cam and preide
With othre suche as be therinne,
And sein that he mai nothing winne
Aycin the deth, bot thei him rede,
He be wel war and tak hiede,
The See be weie of his nature
Receive mai no creature 1090
Withinne himself as forto holde,
The which is ded: forthi thei wolde,
As thei conseilen al aboute, P. iii. 312
The dede body casten oute.
For betre it is, thei seiden alle,
That it of hire so befalle,
Than if thei scholden alle spille.

1063 and my desir AdBT, W and desir J 1069 it myhte
FWK 1076 For evere] Was cuer(e) AH1 . . . Bz, AdBT Was
neuere M

[APOLLONIUS OF TYRE.]

Qualiter suadentibus nautis corpus vxoris sue mortue in quadam Cista plumbo et ferro obtusa que circumligata Appollinus cum magno thesauro vna cum quadam littera sub eius capite scripta recludi et in mare proici fecit.

The king, which understod here wille
 And knew here conseil that was trewe,
 Began ayein his sorwe newe 1100
 With pitous herte, and thus to seie:
 'It is al reson that ye preie.
 I am,' quod he, 'bot on al one,
 So wolde I noght for mi persone
 Ther felle such aduersite.
 Bot whan it mai no betre be,
 Doth thanne thus upon my word,
 Let make a cofre strong of bord,
 That it be ferm with led and pich.'
 Anon was mad a cofre sich, 1110
 Al redy broght unto his hond;
 And whanne he sih and redy fond
 This cofre mad and wel enclosed,
 The dede bodi was besowed
 In cloth of gold and leid therinne.
 And for he wolde unto hire winne
 Upon som cooste a Sepulture,
 Under hire heved in aventure
 Of gold he leide Sommes grete
 And of jeueals a strong beyete 1120
 Forth with a lettre, and seide thus:
 'I, king of Tyr Appollinus,
 Do alle maner men to wite, P. iii. 313
 That hierre and se this lettre write,
 That helpeles withoute red
 Hier lith a kinges doghter ded:
 And who that happeth hir to finde,
 For charite tak in his mynde,
 And do so that sche be begrave
 With this tresor, which he schal have.' 1130
 Thus whan the lettre was full spoke,
 Thei haue anon the cofre stoke,

1098 Latin here and at 1102, 1141, 1151, 1304, 1373, 1424 om. SA (up to 2029 om. Δ) 1102 margin obtusa que C, B obtusaque A, F 1106 marg. in mari A... B, BT 1107 jis AdBT 1110 sich (siehe, swiche) AJMRB, BΔ, W such (suche) H, XECL, SAdT, FK 1120 of jeueals a of Ieweles (jewels) AM... B, AdBT of the Ieweles a W 1128 tak AJ, S, F take C, B 1131 whan (when) AJ, SB whanne F

Copia littere Appolini capiti vxoris sue supposite.

[APOLLONIUS OF TYRE.]

And bounden it with yren faste,
 That it may with the wawes laste,
 And stoppen it be such a weie,
 That it schal be withinne dreie,
 So that no water myhte it grieve.
 And thus in hope and good believe
 Of that the corps schal wel arye,
 Thei caste it over bord als blyve. 1140
 The Schip forth on the wawes wente;
 The prince hath changed his entente,
 And seith he wol noght come at Tyr
 As thanne, bot al his desir
 Is ferst to seilen unto Tharse.
 The wyndy Storm began to skarse,
 The Sonne arist, the weder cliereth,
 The Schipman which behinde stiereth,
 Whan that he sih the wyndes saghte,
 Towardes Tharse his cours he straghte. 1150
 Bot now to mi matiere ayein,
 To telle as olde bokes sein,
 This dede corps of which ye knowe P. iii. 314
 With wynd and water was forthrowe
 Now hier, now ther, til ate laste
 At Ephesim the See upcaste
 The cofre and al that was therinne.
 Of gret merveile now beginne
 Mai hierre who that sitteth stille;
 That god wol save mai noght spille. 1160
 Riht as the corps was throwe alonde,
 Ther cam walkende upon the stronde
 A worthi clerc, a Surgien,
 And ek a gret Phisicien,
 Of al that lond the wisest on,
 Which hihte Maister Cerymon;
 Ther were of his disciples some.
 This Maister to the Cofre is come,
 He peiseth ther was somewhat in,
 And bad hem bere it to his In, 1170

Qualiter Appollinus, vxoris sue corpore in mare proiecto, Tyrum relinquens cursum suum versus Tharsim nauigio dolens arripuit.

Qualiter corpus predictae defuncte super litus apud Ephesim quidam medicus nomine Cerymon cum aliquibus suis discipulis inuenit; quod in hospicium suum portans et extra cistam ponens, spiraculo vite in ea adhuc inuento, ipsam plene sanitati restituit.

1142 This prince AJM, SA 1156 margin suum om. A... B, BT 1168 the] jis BΔ, W

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

And goth himselve forth withal.
 Al that schal falle, falle schal;
 They comen hom and tarie noght;
 This Cofre is into chambre broght,
 Which that thei finde faste stoke,
 Bot thei with craft it have unloke.
 Thei loken in, where as thei founde
 A bodi ded, which was bewounde
 In cloth of gold, as I seide er,
 The tresor ek thei founden ther 1180
 Forth with the lettre, which thei rede.
 And tho thei token betre hiede;
 Unsowed was the bodi sone, P. iii. 315
 And he, which knew what is to done,
 This noble clerk, with alle haste
 Began the veines forto taste,
 And sih hire Age was of youthe,
 And with the craftes whiche he couthe
 He soghte and fond a signe of lif.
 With that this worthi kinges wif 1190
 Honestely thei token oute,
 And maden fyres al aboute;
 Thei leide hire on a couche softe,
 And with a scheete warmed ofte
 Hire colde brest began to hete,
 Hire herte also to flacke and bete.
 This Maister hath hire every joingt
 With certein oile and balsme enoingt,
 And putte a liquour in hire mouth,
 Which is to fewe clerkes couth, 1200
 So that sche coevereth ate laste:
 And ferst hire yhen up sche caste,
 And whan sche more of strengthe cawhte,
 Hire Armes bothe forth sche strawhte,
 Hield up hire hond and pitously
 Sche spak and seide, 'Ha, wher am I?
 Where is my lord, what world is this?'

1178 was iwounde (I wounde &c.) AM . . . L. was I bounde B₁ lay
 ywounde AdBT 1184 which . . . is] jat . . . was AM . . . B₁,
 AdBT 1206 Ha om. MXR, AdBT, W

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

As sche that wot noght hou it is.
 Bot Cerymon the worthi leche
 Ansuerde anon upon hire speche 1210
 And seith, 'Ma dame, yee ben hiere,
 Where yee be sauf, as yee schal hiere
 Hierafterward; forthi as nou P. iii. 316
 Mi conseil is, conforteth you:
 For trusteth wel withoute faile,
 Ther is nothing which schal you faile,
 That oghte of reson to be do.'
 Thus passen thei a day or tuo;
 Thei speke of noght as for an ende,
 Til sche began somdiel amende, 1220
 And wiste hireselven what sche mente.
 Tho forto knowe hire hol entente,
 This Maister axeth al the cas,
 Hou sche cam there and what sche was.
 'Hou I cam hiere wot I noght,'
 Quod sche, 'bot wel I am bethoght
 Of othre thinges al aboute':
 Fro point to point and tolde him oute
 Als ferforthli as sche it wiste.
 And he hire tolde hou in a kiste 1230
 The See hire threw upon the lond,
 And what tresor with hire he fond,
 Which was al redy at hire wille,
 As he that schop him to fille
 With al his myht what thing he scholde.
 Sche thonketh him that he so wolde,
 And al hire herte sche discloseth,
 And seith him wel that sche supposeth
 Hire lord be dreint, hir child also;
 So sih sche noght bot alle wo. 1240
 Wherof as to the world nomore
 Ne wol sche torne, and preith therefore
 That in som temple of the Cite, P. iii. 317
 To kepe and holde hir chastete,
 Sche mihte among the wommen duelle.

Qualiter vxor Ap-
 polini sanata domum
 religionis peciit, vbi
 sacro velamine muni-
 ta castam omni tem-
 pore se vovuit.

1222 hol (hool) C, B, F hole AB₁ 1224 margin sacro] facto BT
 1240 sih] seiþ AML

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

Whan he this tale hir herde telle,
 He was riht glad, and made hire knowen
 That he a dowhter of his owen
 Hath, which he wol unto hir yive
 To serve, whil thei bothe live, 1250
 In stede of that which sche hath lost ;
 Al only at his oghne cost
 Sche schal be rendred forth with hire.
 She seith, 'Grant mercy, lieve sire,
 God quite it you, ther I ne may.'
 And thus thei drive forth the day,
 Til time com that sche was hol ;
 And tho thei take her conseil hol,
 To schape upon good ordinance
 And make a worthi pourveance 1260
 Ayein the day whan thei be veiled.
 And thus, whan that thei be conseled,
 In blake clothes thei hem clothe,
 This lady and the dowhter bothe,
 And yolde hem to religion.
 The feste and the profession
 After the reule of that degre
 Was mad with gret solempnete,
 Where as Diane is seintefied ;
 Thus stant this lady justefied 1270
 In ordre wher sche thenkth to duelle.

Bot now ayeinward forto telle
 In what plit that hire lord stod inne : P. iii. 318
 He seileth, til that he may winne
 The havene of Tharse, as I seide er ;
 And whanne he was aryved ther,
 And it was thurgh the Cite knowe,
 Men myhte se withinne a throwe,
 As who seith, al the toun at ones,
 That come ayein him for the nones, 1280
 To yiven him the reverence,
 So glad thei were of his presence :

1252 line om. B 1253 schal] ha] AdBT 1258 took(c) LBs
 AdBT, W 1260 made AH. . . B, AdBT 1274 seiled AdBT
 1277 And FW Tho ACLBs, B

Qualiter Appolinus
 Tharsim nauigans, fi-
 liam suam Thaisim
 Strangulioni et Dionis-
 sie vxori sue edican-
 dam commendauit ; et
 deinde Tyrum adit,
 vbi cum inestimabili
 gaudio a suis receptus
 est.

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

And thogh he were in his corage
 Desesed, yit with glad visage
 He made hem chiere, and to his In,
 Wher he whilom sojourned in,
 He goth him straght and was reseived.
 And whan the presse of poeple is weived,
 He takth his hoste unto him tho,
 And seith, 'Mi frend Strangulio, 1290
 Lo, thus and thus it is befallé,
 And thou thiself art on of alle,
 Forth with thi wif, whiche I most triste.
 Forthi, if it you bothe liste,
 My doghter Thaise be youre leue
 I thenke schal with you beleve
 As for a time ; and thus I preie,
 That sche be kept be alle weie,
 And whan sche hath of age more,
 That sche be set to bokes lore. 1300
 And this avou to god I make,
 That I schal nevere for hir sake
 Mi berd for no likinge schave, P. iii. 319
 Til it befallé that I have
 In covenable time of age
 Beset hire unto mariage.'
 Thus thei acorde, and al is wel,
 And forto resten him somdel,
 As for a while he ther sojorneth,
 And thanne he takth his leue and torneth 1310
 To Schipe, and goth him hom to Tyr,
 Wher every man with gret desir
 Awaiteth upon his comynge.
 Bot whan the Schip com in seilinge,
 And thei perceiven it is he,
 Was nevere yit in no cite
 Such joie mad as thei tho made ;
 His herte also began to glade
 Of that he sih the poeple glad.
 Lo, thus fortune his hap hath lad ; 1320

1293 whiche A, S, F which JC, B 1315 And parceiuen jat it B
 1319]e FW his ACLBs, B

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

Qualiter Thaysis
vna cum Philotenna
Strangulionis et Dio-
nise filia omnis scien-
cie et honestatis doc-
trina imbata est: set
Thais Philotennam
precellens in odium
mortale per inuidiam
a Dionisia recollecta
est.

In sondri wise he was travailed,
Bot hou so evere he be assailed,
His latere ende schal be good.
And forto speke hou that it stod
Of Thaise his doghter, wher sche duelleth,
In Tharse, as the Cronique telleth,
Sche was wel kept, sche was wel loked,
Sche was wel tawht, sche was wel boked,
So wel sche spedde hir in hire youthe
That sche of every wisdom couthe, 1330
That forto seche in every lond
So wys an other noman fond,
Ne so wel tawht at mannes yhe. P. iii. 320
Bot wo worthe evere fals envie!
For it befell that time so,
A dowhter hath Strangulio,
The which was cleped Philotenne:
Bot fame, which wole evere renne,
Cam al day to hir moder Ere,
And seith, wher evere hir doghter were 1340
With Thayse set in eny place,
The comun vois, the comun grace
Was al upon that other Maide,
And of hir doghter noman saide.
Who wroth but Dionise thanne?
Hire thoghte a thousand yer til whanne
Sche myhte ben of Thaise wreke
Of that sche herde folk so speke.
And fell that ilke same tyde,
That ded was trewe Lychoride, 1350
Which hadde be servant to Thaise,
So that sche was the worse at aise,
For sche hath thanne no servise
Bot only thurgh this Dionise,
Which was hire dedlich Anemie
Thurgh pure treson and envie.
Sche, that of alle sorwe can,
Tho spak unto hire bondeman,
Which cleped was Theophilus,
1334 worþe J, F worþ AC, SB

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

And made him swere in conseil thus, 1360
That he such time as sche him sette
Schal come Thaise forto fette,
And lede hire oute of alle sihte, P. iii. 321
Wher as noman hire helpe myhte,
Upon the Stronde nyh the See,
And there he schal this maiden sle.
This cherles herte is in a traunce,
As he which drad him of vengeance
Whan time comth an other day;
Bot yit dorste he nocht seie nay, 1370
Bot swor and seide he schal fulfille
Hire hestes at hire oghne wille.
The treson and the time is schape,
So fell it that this cherles knape
Hath lad this maiden ther he wolde
Upon the Stronde, and what sche scholde
Sche was adrad; and he out breide
A rusti swerd and to hir seide,
'Thou schalt be ded.' 'Helas!' quod sche,
'Why schal I so?' 'Lo thus,' quod he, 1380
'Mi ladi Dionise hath bede,
Thou schalt be moerdred in this stede.'
This Maiden tho for feere schryhte,
And for the love of god almyhte
Sche preith that for a litel stounde
Sche myhte knele upon the grounde,
Toward the hevene forto crave,
Hire wofull Soule if sche mai save:
And with this noise and with this cry,
Out of a barge faste by, 1390
Which hidd was ther on Scomerfare,
Men sterten out and weren ware
Of this feloun, and he to go, P. iii. 322
And sche began to crie tho,

Qualiter Dionisia
Thaysim, vt occidere-
tur, Theophilo seruo
suo tradidit, qui cum
noctanter longius ab
vrbe ipsam prope litus
maris interficere pro-
posuerat, Pirate ibi-
dem prope latitantes
Thaisim de manu Car-
nificis eripuerunt, ip-
samque vsque Ciuita-
tem Mitelenam ducent-
es, cuidam Leonin-
scortorum ibidem
magistro vendiderunt.

1364 wher þat AM . . . B₁, AdBT, W 1371 swer(e) E . . . B₁, K
sware X 1373 margin occideret A . . . B₁, BT 1374 cherliss
(cherlische &c.) H₁ . . . B₁, AdBT, K 1375 wher(e) H₁ . . . B₁,
AdBTA, W 1378 margin Pirate ibidem prope] Pirate ibidem
A . . . B₁ ibidem BT 1383 margin reddiderunt AM 1388
þat sche AM . . . B₁, AdBT 1389 and þis cry A

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

'Ha, mercy, help for goddes sake!
 Into the barge thei hire take,
 As thieves scholde, and forth thei wente.
 Upon the See the wynd hem hente,
 And malgre wher thei wolde or non, 1400
 Tofor the weder forth thei gon,
 Ther halp no Seil, ther halp non Ore,
 Forstormed and forblowen sore
 In gret peril so forth thei dryve,
 Til ate laste thei aryve
 At Mitelene the Cite.
 In havene sauf and whan thei be,
 The Maister Schipman made him boun,
 And goth him out into the toun,
 And profreth Thaise forto selle.
 On Leonin it herde telle, 1410
 Which Maister of the bordel was,
 And bad him gon a redy pas
 To fetten hire, and forth he wente,
 And Thaise out of his barge he hente,
 And to this bordeller hir solde.
 And he, that be hire body wolde
 Take advantage, let do crye,
 That what man wolde his lecherie
 Attempte upon hire maidenhede,
 Lei down the gold and he schal spede. 1420
 And thus whan he hath crid it oute
 In syhte of al the poeple aboute,
 He ladde hire to the bordel tho. P. iii. 323
 No wonder is thogh sche be wo:
 Clos in a chambre be hireselve,
 Ech after other ten or twelve
 Of yonge men to hire in wente;
 Bot such a grace god hire sente,
 That for the sorwe which sche made
 Was non of hem which pouer hade 1430

Qualiter Leoninus
 Thaisim ad lupanar
 destinavit, ubi dei
 gracia preuenta ipsius
 virginitatem nullus
 violare potuit.

1399 thei] sche B 1413 fecchen (fechen) AM... B₁, AdB sechen T
 1415 hir] he AM... B₁, AdBT₁ 1416 And jat he by (be) H₁... B₁
 And jat by AM 1423 Paragraph here in MSS. 1424 No
 wonder jough sche were wo B No wonder jogh sche be wo Ad

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

To don hire eny vileinie.
 This Leonin let evere asprie,
 And waiteth after gret beyete;
 Bot al for noght, sche was forlete,
 That mo men wolde ther noght come.
 Whan he therof hath hiede nome,
 And knew that sche was yit a maide,
 Unto his oghne man he saide,
 That he with strengthe ayein hire leve
 Tho scholde hir maidenhod bereve. 1440
 This man goth in, bot so it ferde,
 Whan he hire wofull pleintes herde
 And he therof hath take kepe,
 Him liste betre forto wepe
 Than don oght elles to the game.
 And thus sche kepte herself fro schame,
 And kneleth down to therthe and preide
 Unto this man, and thus sche seide:
 'If so be that thi maister wolde
 That I his gold encresce scholde, 1450
 It mai nocht falle be this weie:
 Bot soffre me to go mi weie
 Out of this hous wher I am inne, P. iii. 324
 And I schal make him forto winne
 In som place elles of the toun,
 Be so it be religioun,
 Wher that honeste wommen duelle.
 And thus thou myht thi maister telle,
 That whanne I have a chambre there,
 Let him do crie ay wyde where, 1460
 What lord that hath his doghter diere,
 And is in will that sche schal liere
 Of such a Scole that is trewe,
 I schal hire teche of thinges newe,
 Which as non other womman can
 In al this lond.' And tho this man

1435 nomen wolde þer nocht come K nomen wolden þeer (þer)
 come AM no man (noman) wolde þer(c) come H₁... B₁, AdBT mo men
 wolde ther none come W 1447 kneled BTΔ 1450 good BT
 1456 be of rel. AM... B₁, BT 1465 Which jat AM... B₁, BT

[APOLLONIUS OF TYRE.]

Hire tale hath herd, he goth ayein,
 And tolde unto his maister plein
 That sche hath seid; and therupon,
 Whan than he sih beyete non 1470
 At the bordel be cause of hire,
 He bad his man to gon and spire
 A place wher sche myhte abyde,
 That he mai winne upon som side
 Be that sche can: bot ate leste
 Thus was sche sauf fro this tempeste.

He hath hire fro the bordel take,
 Bot that was nocht for goddes sake,
 Bot for the lucre, as sche him tolde.

Now comen tho that comen wolde 1480
 Of wommen in her lusty youthe,
 To hierre and se what thing sche couthe:
 Sche can the wisdom of a clerk, P. iii. 325
 Sche can of every lusti werk

Which to a gentil womman longeth,
 And some of hem sche underfongeth
 To the Citole and to the Harpe,
 And whom it liketh forto carpe
 Proverbes and demandes slyhe, 1490
 An other such thei nevere syhe,
 Which that science so wel tawhte:
 Wherof sche grete yiftes cawhte,
 That sche to Leonin hath wonne;
 And thus hire name is so begonne
 Of sondri thinges that she techeth,
 That al the lond unto hir secheth
 Of yonge wommen forto liere.

Nou lete we this maiden hierre,
 And speke of Dionise ayein
 And of Theophile the vilein, 1500
 Of whiche I spak of nou tofore.
 Whan Thaise scholde have be forlore,
 This false chert to his lady
 Whan he cam hom, al prively

1476 fro] of AM . . . B₁, BT 1484 eny AM . . . B₁, B
 1500 Theophile AJC, T, F Theophil B 1503 margin configentes F

Qualiter Thaisia a
 lupanari virgo liber-
 ata, inter sacras muli-
 eres hospicium ha-
 bens, sciencias quibus
 edocta fuit nobiles
 regni puellas ibidem
 edocebat.

Qualiter Theophilus
 ad Dionisiam mane
 rediens affirmavit se
 Thaisiam occidisse; su-
 per quo Dionisia vna
 cum Strangulione ma-
 rito suo dolorem in
 publico confingentes,
 exequias et sepultu-
 ram honorifice quan-

[APOLLONIUS OF TYRE.]

tum ad extra subdola
 coniectacione fieri
 constituerunt.

He seith, 'Ma Dame, slain I have
 This maide Thaise, and is begrave
 In prive place, as ye me biede.
 Forthi, ma dame, taketh hiede
 And kep conseil, hou so it stonde.'
 This fend, which this hath understonde, 1510
 Was glad, and weneth it be soth:
 Now herkne, hierafter hou sche doth.
 Sche wepeth, sche sorweth, sche compleigneth, P. iii. 326

And of sieknesse which sche feigneth
 Sche seith that Taise sodeinly
 Be nyhte is ded, 'as sche and I
 Togedre lyhen nyh my lord.'

Sche was a womman of record,
 And al is lieved that sche seith;
 And forto yive a more feith, 1520
 Hire housebonde and ek sche bothe

In blake clothes thei hem clothe,
 And made a gret enterrement;
 And for the poeple schal be blent,
 Of Thaise as for the remembrance,
 After the real olde usance
 A tumbe of latoun noble and riche
 With an ymage unto hir liche
 Liggende above therupon
 Thei made and sette it up anon. 1530

Hire Epitaffe of good assisse
 Was write aboute, and in this wise
 It spak: 'O yee that this beholde,
 Lo, hier lith sche, the which was holde
 The faireste and the flour of alle,
 Whos name Thaisis men calle.
 The king of Tyr Appolinus
 Hire fader was: now lith sche thus.
 Fourtiene yer sche was of Age,
 Whan deth hir tok to his viage.' 1540

'Thus was this false treson hidd,

1505 ich haue AM 1509 kepeþ BT 1512 Now se her
 after B Now hierre after T 1513 sorweth] criepþ BT 1523
 make BT om. W 1534 the om. AM, Δ, W

Qualiter Appolinus
 in regno suo apud

[APOLLONIUS OF TYRE.]

Tyrum existens parlamentum fieri constituit.

Which afterward was wyde kidd,
 As be the tale a man schal hiere. **P. iii. 327**
 Bot forto clare mi matiere,
 To Tyr I thenke torne ayein,
 And telle as the Croniqes sein.
 Whan that the king was comen hom,
 And hath left in the salte fom
 His wif, which he mai nocht foryete,
 For he som confort wolde gete, **1550**
 He let somoune a parlement,
 To which the lordes were asent;
 And of the time he hath ben oute,
 He seth the thinges al aboute,
 And told hem ek hou he hath fare,
 Whil he was out of londe fare;
 And preide hem alle to abyde,
 For he wolde at the same tyde
 Do schape for his wyves mynde,
 As he that wol nocht ben unkinde. **1560**
 Solempne was that ilke office,
 And riche was the sacrifice,
 The feste reali was holde:
 And therto was he wel beholde;
 For such a wif as he hadde on
 In thilke daies was ther non.

Qualiter Appolinus post parlamentum Tharsim pro Thaise filia sua querenda adlit, qua ibidem non inventa abinde navigio recessit.

Whan this was do, thanne he him thoughte
 Upon his doghter, and besoghte
 Suche of his lordes as he wolde,
 That thei with him to Tharse scholde, **1570**
 To fette his doghter Taise there:
 And thei anon al redy were,
 To schip they gon and forth thei wente, **P. iii. 328**
 Til thei the havene of Tharse hente.
 They londe and faile of that thei seche
 Be coverture and sleyhte of speche:
 This false man Strangulio,
 And Dionise his wif also,
 That he the betre trowe myhte,

1544 forto clare] to declare AM . . . B₂, BT tolde C

1555 told A, B, F

1580 [APOLLONIUS OF TYRE.]

Thei ladden him to have a sihte
 Wher that hir tombe was arraied.
 The lasse yit he was mispaied,
 And natheles, so as he dorste,
 He curseth and seith al the worste
 Unto fortune, as to the blinde,
 Which can no seker weie finde;
 For sche him neweth evere among,
 And medleth sorwe with his song.
 Bot sithe it mai no betre be,

He thonketh god and forth goth he
 Seilende toward Tyr ayein.
 Bot sodeinly the wynd and reyn
 Begonne upon the See debate,
 So that he soffre mot algate
 The lawe which Neptune ordeigneth;
 Wherof fulofte time he pleigneth,
 And hield him wel the more esmaied
 Of that he hath tofore assaied.

So that for pure sorwe and care,
 Of that he seth his world so fare, **1600**
 The reste he lefte of his Caban,
 That for the conseil of noman
 Ayein therinne he nolde come, **P. iii. 329**
 Bot hath benethe his place nome,
 Wher he wepende al one lay,
 Ther as he sih no lyht of day.
 And thus tofor the wynd thei dryve,
 Til longe and late thei aryve
 With gret distresce, as it was sene,
 Upon this toun of Mitelene, **1610**
 Which was a noble cite tho.
 And hapneth thilke time so,
 The lordes bothe and the comune
 The hihe festes of Neptune
 Upon the stronde at the rivage,
 As it was custumme and usage,
 Sollempneliche thei besihe.

1590 Qualiter Nautis Appolini ventis agitata portum vrbis Mitelene in die quo festa Neptuni celebrare consueverunt applicuit; set ipse pre dolore Thaysis filie sue, quam mortuam reputabat, in fundo nautis obscuro iacens lumen videre noluit.

1590 Paragraph here FWK, at 1595 in most other copies margin celebrari A . . . B₂, BT, W

1593

[APOLLONIUS OF TYRE.]

Qualiter Athenagoras vrbis Mitelene Princeps, nauim Apollini inuestigans, ipsum sic contristatum nichilque respondentem consolari satagebat.

Whan thei this strange vessel syhe
 Come in, and hath his Seil aualed,
 The toun therof hath spoke and taled. 1620
 The lord which of the cite was,
 Whos name is Athenagoras,
 Was there, and seide he wolde se
 What Schip it is, and who thei be
 That ben therinne: and after sone,
 Whan that he sih it was to done,
 His barge was for him arraied,
 And he goth forth and hath assaied.
 He fond the Schip of gret Array,
 Bot what thing it amonte may, 1630
 He seth thei maden hevy chiere,
 Bot wel him thenkth be the manere
 That thei be worthi men of blod, P. iii. 330
 And axeth of hem hou it stod;
 And thei him tellen al the cas,
 Hou that here lord fordrive was,
 And what a sorwe that he made,
 Of which ther mai noman him glade.
 He preith that he here lord mai se,
 Bot thei him tolde it mai nocht be, 1640
 For he lith in so derk a place,
 That ther may no wiht sen his face:
 Bot for al that, thogh hem be loth,
 He fond the ladre and doun he goth,
 And to him spak, bot non ansuere
 Ayein of him ne mihte he bere
 For oght that he can don or sein;
 And thus he goth him up ayein.
 Tho was ther spoke in many wise
 Amonges hem that weren wise, 1650
 Now this, now that, bot ate laste
 The wisdom of the toun this caste,
 That yonge Taise were asent.
 For if ther be amendement

Qualiter precepto Principis, vt Appollinum consolaretur, Thaisis cum cithara

1621 jat cite H₁XELB₁, BT 1633 be] were B 1637 which a s.
 AM... B₁, AdBT 1641 so] pe AM 1646 here LB₁, Δ, W 1649
 Paragraph here ALB₁, BT at 1652 J, SAd, FW Tho] Thus A . . . B₁

[APOLLONIUS OF TYRE.]

sua ad ipsum in obscuro nauis, vbi jacebat, producta est.

To glade with this woful king,
 Sche can so moche of every thing,
 That sche schal gladen him anon.
 A Messenger for hire is gon,
 And sche cam with hire Harpe on honde,
 And seide hem that sche wolde fonde 1660
 Be alle weies that sche can,
 To glade with this sory man.
 Bot what he was sche wiste nocht, P. iii. 331
 Bot al the Schip hire hath besoght
 That sche hire wit on him despende,
 In aunter if he myhte amende,
 And sein it schal be wel aquit.
 Whan sche hath understonden it,
 Sche goth hir doun, ther as he lay,
 Wher that sche harpeth many a lay 1670
 And lich an Angel sang withal;
 Bot he nomore than the wal
 Tok hiede of eny thing he herde.
 And whan sche sih that he so ferde,
 Sche falleth with him into wordes,
 And telleth him of sondri bordes,
 And axeth him demandes strange,
 Wherof sche made his herte change,
 And to hire speche his Ere he leide 1680
 And hath merveile of that sche seide.
 For in proverbe and in probleme
 Sche spak, and bad he scholde deme
 In many soubtil question:
 Bot he for no suggestioun
 Which toward him sche couthe stere,
 He wolde nocht o word ansuere,
 Bot as a madd man ate laste
 His heved wepende away he caste,
 And half in wraththe he bad hire go.
 Bot yit sche wolde nocht do so, 1690
 And in the derke forth sche goth,
 Til sche him toucheth, and he wroth,

1661 all(e) pe weies AM . . . B₁, AdBT 1683 many F many
 a ALB₁, B, W 1687 madd man S madd mad man F

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

And after hire with his hond P. iii. 332
 He smot: and thus whan sche him fond
 Desesed, courtaisly sche saide,
 'Avoi, mi lord, I am a Maide;
 And if ye wiste what I am,
 And out of what lignage I cam,
 Ye wolde nocht be so salvage.'

Qualiter, sicut deus
destinavit, pater fi-
liam inuentam recog-
novit.

With that he sobreth his corage 1700
 And put away his hevvy chiere.
 Bot of hem tuo a man mai liere
 What is to be so sibb of blod:
 Non wiste of other hou it stod,
 And yit the fader ate laste
 His herte upon this maide caste,
 That he hire loveth kindely,
 And yit he wiste nevere why.
 Bot al was knowe er that thei wente;
 For god, which wot here hol entente, 1710
 Here hertes bothe anon descloseth.
 This king unto this maide opposeth,
 And axeth ferst what was hire name,
 And wher sche lerned al this game,
 And of what ken that sche was come.
 And sche, that hath hise wordes nome,
 Ansuert and seith, 'My name is Thaise,
 That was som time wel at aise:
 In Tharse I was forthdrawe and fed,
 Ther lerned I, til I was sped, 1720
 Of that I can. Mi fader eke
 I not wher that I scholde him seke;
 He was a king, men tolde me: P. iii. 333
 Mi Moder dreint was in the See.'
 Fro point to point al sche him tolde,
 That sche hath longe in herte holde,
 And nevere dorste make hir mone
 Bot only to this lord al one,
 To whom hire herte can nocht hele,
 Torne it to wo, torne it to wele, 1730

1710 hol B, F hole ABs 1713 was FW is ALBs, B 1715
 that om. AM, W

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

Torne it to good, torne it to harm.
 And he tho toke hire in his arm,
 Bot such a joie as he tho made
 Was nevere sen; thus be thei glade,
 That sory hadden be toform.
 Fro this day forth fortune hath sworn
 To sette him upward on the whiel;
 So goth the world, now wo, now wel:
 This king hath founde newe grace,
 So that out of his derke place 1740
 He goth him up into the liht,
 And with him cam that swete wiht,
 His doghter Thaise, and forth anon
 Thei bothe into the Caban gon
 Which was ordeigned for the king,
 And ther he dede of al his thing,
 And was arraied realy.

And out he cam al openly,
 Wher Athenagoras he fond,
 The which was lord of al the lond:
 He preith the king to come and se
 His castell bothe and his cite,
 And thus thei gon forth alle in fiere, P. iii. 334
 This king, this lord, this maiden diere.
 This lord tho made hem riche feste
 With every thing which was honeste,
 To plesse with this worthi king,
 Ther lacketh him no maner thing:
 Bot yit for al his noble array 1760
 Wifles he was into that day,
 As he that yit was of yong Age;
 So fell ther into his corage
 The lusti wo, the glade peine
 Of love, which noman restreigne
 Yit nevere myhte as nou tofore.
 This lord thenkth al his world forlore,
 Bot if the king wol don him grace;

Qualiter Athenagoras Appolinum de
nani in hospicium ho-
norifice recollegit, et
Thaisim, patre con-
senciente, in vxorem
duxit.

1732 toke J, S, F tok (took) AEC, B 1750 lat lond AJM,
 SA 1754 maiden] daughter B 1756 which was jo h. AM
 1761 of yong] yong of E, B

CONFESSIO AMANTIS

He waiteth time, he waiteth place,
Him thoghte his herte wol tobreke,
Til he mai to this maide speke 1770
And to hir fader ek also
For mariage: and it fell so,
That al was do riht as he thoghte,
His pourpos to an ende he broghte,
Sche weddeth him as for hire lord;
Thus be thei alle of on acord.
Whan al was do riht as thei wolde,
The king unto his Sone tolde
Of Tharse thilke traierie, 1780
And seide hou in his compaignie
His doghter and himselven eke
Schull go vengeance forto seke.
The Schipes were redy sone, P. iii. 335
And whan thei sihe it was to done,
Withoute lette of eny wente
With Seil updrawe forth thei wente
Towardes Tharse upon the tyde.
Bot he that wot what schal betide,
The hihe god, which wolde him kepe,
Whan that this king was faste aslepe, 1790
Be nyhtes time he hath him bede
To seile into an other stede:
To Ephesim he bad him drawe,
And as it was that time lawe,
He schal do there his sacrificise;
And ek he bad in alle wise
That in the temple amonges alle
His fortune, as it is befaller,
Touchende his doghter and his wif
He schal beknowe upon his lif. 1800
The king of this Avisioun
Hath gret ymaginacioun,
What thing it signefie may;
And natheles, whan it was day,
He bad caste Ancher and abod;
And whil that he on Ancher rod,

1790 þe king JC 1792 vnto Hi . . . Bz, AdB, W

Qualiter Appolinus
vna cum filia et eius
marito nauim ingredi-
entes a Mitelena vs-
que Tharsim cursum
proposuerunt. Set
Appolinus in somp-
nis ammonitus versus
Ephesim, vt ibidem in
templo Diane sacri-
ficaret, vela per mare
diuertit.

The wynd, which was tofore strange,
Upon the point began to change,
And torneth thider as it scholde.
Tho knew he wel that god it wolde, 1810
And bad the Maister make him yare,
Tofor the wynd for he wol fare
To Ephesim, and so he dede. P. iii. 336
And whanne he cam unto the stede
Where as he scholde londe, he londeth
With al the haste he may, and fondeth
To schapen him be such a wise,
That he may be the morwe arise
And don after the mandement
Of him which hath him thider sent. 1820
And in the wise that he thoghte,
Upon the morwe so he wroghte;
His doghter and his Sone he nom,
And forth unto the temple he com
With a gret route in compaignie,
Hise yiftes forto sacrificise.
The citezeins tho herden seie
Of such a king that cam to preie
Unto Diane the godesse,
And left al other besenise, 1830
Thei comen thider forto se
The king and the solempnete.
With worthi knyhtes environed
The king himself hath abandoned
Into the temple in good entente.
The dore is up, and he in wente,
Wher as with gret devocioun
Of holi contemplacioun
Withinne his herte he made his schrifte;
And after that a riche yifte 1840
He offreth with gret reverence,
And there in open Audience
Of hem that stoden thanne aboute, P. iii. 337
He tolde hem and declareth oute

1836 he in F in he A . . . Bz, S . . . Δ, WK 1842 euidence AdBT
843 thanne aboute] al (alle) aboute AM . . . Bz, AdT þer aboute B

Qualiter Appolinus
Ephesim in templo
Diane sacrificans, vx-
orem suam ibidem vela-
tam inuenit; qua se-
cum assumpta in Na-
uim, versus Tyrum re-
gressus est.

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

His hap, such as him is befallē,
 Ther was nothing foryete of alle.
 His wif, as it was goddes grace,
 Which was professed in the place,
 As sche that was Abbesse there,
 Unto his tale hath leid hire Ere: 1850
 Sche knew the vois and the visage,
 For pure joie as in a rage
 Sche strawhte unto him al at ones,
 And fell aswoune upon the stones,
 Wherof the temple flor was paved.
 Sche was anon with water laved,
 Til sche cam to himself ayein,
 And thanne sche began to sein:
 'Ha, blessed be the hihe sonde,
 That I mai se myn housebonde, 1860
 That whilom he and I were on!
 The king with that knew hire anon,
 And tok hire in his Arm and kiste;
 And al the toun thus sone it wiste.
 Tho was ther joie manyfold,
 For every man this tale hath told
 As for miracle, and were glade,
 Bot nevere man such joie made
 As doth the king, which hath his wif.
 And whan men herde hou that hir lif 1870
 Was saved, and be whom it was,
 Thei wondren alle of such a cas:
 Thurgh al the Lond aros the speche P. iii. 338
 Of Maister Cerymon the leche
 And of the cure which he dede.
 The king himself tho hath him bede,
 And ek this queene forth with him,
 That he the toun of Ephesim
 Wol leve and go wher as thei be,
 For nevere man of his degre 1880
 Hath do to hem so mochel good;
 And he his profit understod,

1854 aswowe AM aswouwen B 1861 That] Which AM . . . B₁,
 AdBT 1877 je queene AM . . . B₁, AdBT

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

And granteth with hem forto wende.
 And thus thei maden there an ende,
 And token leve and gon to Schipe
 With al the hole felaschipe.
 This king, which nou hath his desir,
 Seith he wol holde his cours to Tyr.
 Thei hadden wynd at wille tho,
 With topseilcole and forth they go, 1890
 And striken nevere, til thei come
 To Tyr, where as thei havene nome,
 And londen hem with mochel blisse.
 Tho was ther many a mowth to kisse,
 Echon welcometh other hom,
 Bot whan the queen to londe com,
 And Thaise hir doghter be hir side,
 The joie which was thilke tyde
 Ther mai no mannes tunge telle:
 Thei seiden alle, 'Hier comth the welle 1900
 Of alle wommannysshe grace.'
 The king hath take his real place,
 The queene is into chambre go: P. iii. 339
 Ther was gret feste arraied tho;
 Whan time was, thei gon to mete,
 Alle olde sorwes ben foryete,
 And gladen hem with joies newe:
 The descoloured pale hewe
 Is now become a rody cheke,
 Ther was no merthe forto seke, 1910
 Bot every man hath that he wolde.
 The king, as he wel couthe and scholde,
 Makth to his poeple riht good chiere;
 And after sone, as thou schalt hiere,
 A parlement he hath sommoned,
 Wher he his doghter hath coroned
 Forth with the lord of Mitelene,
 That on is king, that other queene:
 And thus the fadres ordinance

Qualiter Appolinus
 vna cum vxore et filia
 sua Thyrum applicuit.

Qualiter Appolinus
 Athenagoram cum
 Thaise vxore sua su-
 per Tyrum coronari
 fecit.

1890 topseil(e) cole H₁ . . . B₂, AdBTΔ, W 1892 havene]
 haue C, AdBT, W je haue B₂ 1911 what he w. X . . . B₂, AdBT
 1912 ff. margin Qualiter—fecit om. BΔ

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

This lond hath set in governance, 1920
 And seide thanne he wolde wende
 To Tharse, forto make an ende
 Of that his doghter was betraied.
 Therof were alle men wel paied,
 And seide hou it was forto done:
 The Schipes weren redi sone,
 And strong pouer with him he tok;
 Up to the Sky he caste his lok,
 And syh the wynd was covenantable.

Thei hale up Ancher with the cable, 1930
 The Seil on hih, the Stiere in honde,
 And seilen, til thei come alonde
 At Tharse nyh to the cite; P. iii. 340

And whan thei wisten it was he,
 The toun hath don him reverence.
 He telleth hem the violence,
 Which the tretour Strangulio
 And Dionise him hadde do
 Touchende his dowhter, as yee herde;
 And whan thei wiste hou that it ferde, 1940
 As he which pes and love soghte,
 Unto the toun this he besoghte,
 To don him riht in juggement.
 Anon thei were bothe asent
 With strengthe of men, and comen sone,
 And as hem thoghte it was to done,
 Atteint thei were be the lawe
 And diemed forto honge and drawe,
 And brent and with the wynd toblowe,
 That al the world it myhte knowe: 1950
 And upon this condicion
 The dom in execucion
 Was put anon withoute faille.
 And every man hath gret mervaille,

1920 lord B 1921 thanne]jat AM . . . Bz, AdBT 1924 Wher
 of (Wherof) H1 . . . Bz, AdBT, W 1927 And FW A ACLBz
 B 1928 Up to] Vpon AM . . . Bz, AdBT 1931 on honde
 AM . . . Bz, AdBT, W 1939 he herde AM, W 1940 wiste(n)
 how it AM . . . Bz, AdBT, W

Qualiter Appolinus
 a Tyro per mare ver-
 sus Tharsim iter arri-
 piens vindictam contra
 Strangullonem et Di-
 onisiam vxorem suam
 pro iniuria, quam ipsi
 Thaisi filie sue intule-
 runt, iudicialiter asse-
 cutus est.

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

Which herde tellen of this chance,
 And thonketh goddes pourveance,
 Which doth mercy forth with justice.
 Slain is the moerdrer and moerdrice
 Thurgh verray trowthe of rihtwisenesse,
 And thurgh mercy sauf is simplesse 1960
 Of hire whom mercy preserveth;
 Thus hath he wel that wei deserveth.

Whan al this thing is don and ended, P. iii. 341
 This king, which loved was and frended,
 A lettre hath, which cam to him
 Be Schipe fro Pentapolim,
 Be which the lond hath to him write,
 That he wolde understonde and wite
 Hou in good mynde and in good pes
 Ded is the king Artestrates, 1970

Wherof thei alle of on acord
 Him preiden, as here liege lord,
 That he the lettre wel conceive
 And come his regne to receive,
 Which god hath yove him and fortune;
 And thus besoghte the commune
 Forth with the grete lordes alle.
 This king sih how it was befallle,
 Fro Tharse and in prosperite
 He tok his leve of that Cite 1980
 And goth him into Schipe ayein:
 The wynd was good, the See was plein,
 Hem nedeth noght a Riff to slake,
 Til thei Pentapolim have take.
 The lond, which herde of that tidinge,
 Was wonder glad of his cominge;
 He resteth him a day or tuo
 And tok his conseil to him tho,
 And sette a time of Parlement,
 Wher al the lond of on assent 1990
 Forth with his wif hath him coroune,

1967 In which AM . . . Bz, AdBT 1973 wil (wol) conceyue
 H1, EL, W wol(e) resceyue AdBT 1978 is befallle AdB, W
 was falle L

Qualiter Artestrate
 Pentapolim Rege mor-
 tuo, ipsi de regno Epi-
 stolas super hoc Ap-
 polino direxerunt:
 vnde Appolinus vna
 cum vxore sua ibidem
 aduenientes ad decus
 imperii cum magno
 gaudio coronati sunt.

[APOLLONIUS OF
TYRE.]

Wher alle goode him was fuisoned.
 Lo, what it is to be wel grounded: P. iii. 342
 For he hath ferst his love founded
 Honesteliche as forto wedde,
 Honesteliche his love he spedde
 And hadde children with his wif,
 And as him liste he ladde his lif;
 And in ensample his lif was write,
 That alle lovers myhten wite 2000
 How ate laste it schal be sene
 Of love what thei wolden mene.
 For se now on that other side,
 Antiochus with al his Pride,
 Which sette his love unkindely,
 His ende he hadde al sodeinly,
 Set ayein kinde upon vengeance,
 And for his lust hath his penance.
 Lo thus, mi Sone, myht thou liere
 What is to love in good manere, 2010
 And what to love in other wise:
 The mede arist of the servise;
 Fortune, thogh sche be nocht stable,
 Yit at som time is favorable
 To hem that ben of love trewe.
 Bot certes it is forto rewe
 To se love ayein kinde falle,
 For that makth sore a man to falle,
 As thou myht of tofore rede.
 Forthi, my Sone, I wolde rede 2020
 To lete al other love aweie,
 Bot if it be thurgh such a weie
 As love and reson wolde acorde. P. iii. 343
 For elles, if that thou descorde,
 And take lust as doth a beste,
 Thi love mai nocht ben honeste;
 For be no skile that I finde

Confessor ad Aman-
tem.

1992 was him AM, Δ, W 1999 his lif was write A... B,
 S... Δ as it is write FWK 2006 he hadde al] he hadde J,
 SA (had) hadde (had) AM... B, AdBT 2009 margin Confessor
 ad Amantem om. JEC, AdBT Confessor B, Δ, W

[THE LOVER RE-
QUIRES COUNSEL.]

Such lust is nocht of loves kinde.
 Mi fader, hou so that it stonde,
 Youre tale is herd and understonde,
 As thing which worthi is to hier, e
 Of gret ensample and gret matiere,
 Wherof, my fader, god you quyte.
 Bot in this point miself aquite
 I mai riht wel, that nevere yit
 I was assooted in my wit,
 Bot only in that worthi place
 Wher alle lust and alle grace
 Is set, if that danger ne were. 2030
 Bot that is al my moste fere:
 I not what ye fortune acompte,
 Bot what thing danger mai amonte
 I wot wel, for I have assaied;
 For whan myn herte is best arraied
 And I have al my wit thurghsoght
 Of love to beseche hire oght,
 For al that evere I skile may,
 I am concluded with a nay:
 That o sillable hath overthrowe
 A thousand wordes on a rowe 2050
 Of suche as I best speke can;
 Thus am I bot a lewed man.
 Bot, fader, for ye ben a clerk P. iii. 344
 Of love, and this matiere is derk,
 And I can evere leng the lasse,
 Bot yit I mai nocht let it passe,
 Youre hole conseil I beseche,
 That ye me be som weie teche
 What is my beste, as for an ende.
 Mi Sone, unto the trouthe wende 2060
 Now wol I for the love of thee,
 And lete alle othre truffles be.

2030 unde pro finali con-
clusionone consilium
Confessoris impetrat.

2040

2050

2060

The more that the nede is hyh,
 The more it nedeth to be slyh

2047 skile] sike AdBT 2056 let S, F lete AJ, B 2062
 truffles AJC, S, F trifles (truffles) L, B travailles W

[THE CONFESSOR
REPLIES.]

Hic super Amoris
causa finita confes-
sione, Confessor Ge-
nius Amanti ea que
sibi salubrius expedi-
unt, asno consilio fina-
liter inlungit.

To him which hath the nede on honde.
I have wel herd and understonde,
Mi Sone, al that thou hast me seid,
And ek of that thou hast me preid,
Nou at this time that I schal
As for conclusioun final 2070
Conseile upon thi nede sette:
So thenke I finaly to knette
This cause, where it is tobroke,
And make an ende of that is spoke.
For I behihte thee that yifte
Ferst whan thou come under my schrifte,
That thogh I toward Venus were,
Yit spak I suche wordes there,
That for the Presthod which I have, 2080
Min ordre and min astat to save,
I seide I wolde of myn office
To vertu more than to vice
Encline, and teche thee mi lore. P. iii. 345
Forthi to speken overmore
Of love, which thee mai availe,
Tak love where it mai nocht faile:
For as of this which thou art inne,
Be that thou seist it is a Sinne,
And Sinne mai no pris deserve,
Withoute pris and who schal serve, 2090
I not what profit myhte availe.
Thus folweth it, if thou travaile,
Wher thou no profit hast ne pris,
Thou art toward thiself unwis:
And sett thou myhtest lust atteigne,
Of every lust thende is a peine,
And every peine is good to fle;
So it is wonder thing to se,
Why such a thing schal be desired.

2071 Conseile J, S, F Conseil (Counsell) AC, B 2073 Thi
(by) cause A . . . Bs, S . . . Δ where] per B 2086 nocht
faile] auaille AM . . . Bs, AdBT (line om. R) 2095 sett] sijte (sijt,
se]te &c.) JH.ERLBs, AdBT, W sertein if Δ 2098 it is Hs,
FK is it AJMX . . . Bs, S . . . A, W

2100 [THE CONFESSOR
REPLIES.]

The more that a Stock is fyred,
The rathere into Aisshe it torneth;
The fot which in the weie sporneth
Fulofte his heved hath overthrowe;
Thus love is blind and can nocht knowe
Wher that he goth, til he be falle:
Forthi, bot if it so befalle
With good conseil that he be lad,
Him oghte forto ben adrad.
For conseil passeth alle thing
To him which thenkth to ben a king; 2110
And every man for his partie
A kingdom hath to justefie,
That is to sein his oghne dom. P. iii. 346
If he misreule that kingdom,
He lest himself, and that is more
Than if he loste Schip and Ore
And al the worldes good withal:
For what man that in special
Hath nocht himself, he hath nocht elles, 2120
Nomor the perles than the schelles;
Al is to him of o value:
Thogh he hadde at his retenue
The wyde world riht as he wolde,
Whan he his herte hath nocht withholdde
Toward himself, al is in vein.
And thus, my Sone, I wolde sein,
As I seide er, that thou aryse,
Er that thou falle in such a wise
That thou ne myht thiself rekevere;
For love, which that blind was evere, 2130
Makth alle his servantz blinde also.
My Sone, and if thou have be so,
Yit is it time to withdrawe,
And set thin herte under that lawe,
The which of reson is governed
And nocht of will. And to be lerned,
Ensamples thou hast many on

2104 This BT Thi Ad And W 2106 so be befalle F
2134 set AJ, S, F sette CLBs, B

[THE CONFESSOR
REPLIES.]

Of now and ek of time gon,
That every lust is bot a while;
And who that wole himself beguile, 2140
He may the rathere be deceived.
Mi Sone, now thou hast conceived
Somwhat of that I wolde mene; P. iii. 347
Hierafterward it schal be sene
If that thou lieve upon mi lore;
For I can do to thee nomore
Bot teche thee the rihte weie:
Now ches if thou wolt live or deie.

[THE CONTROVERSY.]

Hic loquitur de con-
trouersia, que inter
Confessorem et Aman-
tem in fine confes-
sionis versabatur.

Mi fader, so as I have herd
Your tale, bot it were ansuerd, 2150
I were mochel forto blame.
Mi wo to you is bot a game,
That fielen noght of that I fielle;
The fieling of a mannes Hiele
Mai noght be likned to the Herte:
I mai noght, thogh I wolde, asterte,
And ye be fre from al the peine
Of love, wherof I me pleigne.
It is riht esi to comaunde;
The hert which fre goth on the launde 2160
Not of an Oxe what him eileth;
It falleth ofte a man merveileth
Of that he seth an other fare,
Bot if he knewe himself the fare,
And felt it as it is in soth,
He scholde don riht as he doth,
Or elles werse in his degre;
For wel I wot, and so do ye,
That love hath evere yit ben used,
So mot I nedes ben excused. 2170
Bot, fader, if ye wolde thus
Unto Cupide and to Venus
Be frendlich toward mi querele, P. iii. 348
So that myn herte were in hele

2138 agon (a goon) H, RCBs, AdBT, W 2153 That fielen noght
of þat (om. I fielle) A That fielen noght . be likned to þe herte M

[THE CONTROVERSY.]

Of love which is in mi briest,
I wot wel thanne a betre Prest
Was nevere mad to my behove.
Bot al the whiles that I hove
In noncertein between the tuo,
And not if I to wel or wo 2180
Schal torne, that is al my drede,
So that I not what is to rede.
Bot for final conclusion
I thenke a Supplicacion
With pleine wordes and expresse
Wryte unto Venus the goddesse,
The which I preie you to bere
And bringe ayein a good ansuere.
Tho was betwen mi Prest and me
Debat and gret perplexete: 2190
Mi resoun understod him wel,
And knew it was soth everydel
That he hath seid, bot noght forthi
Mi will hath nothing set therby.
For techinge of so wis a port
Is unto love of no desport;
Yit myhte nevere man beholde
Reson, wher love was withholde,
Thei be noght of o governance.
And thus we fellen in distance, 2200
Mi Prest and I, bot I spak faire,
And thurgh mi wordes debonaire
Thanne ate laste we acorden, P. iii. 349
So that he seith he wol recorden
To speke and stonde upon mi syde
To Venus bothe and to Cupide;
And bad me wryte what I wolde,
And seith me trewly that he scholde
Mi lettre bere unto the queene.
And I sat down upon the grene 2210

2178 while AM . . . Bz, AdBT, W 2179 no certein AdBT
the] þe AM 2180 if] wher AM . . . Bz, AdBT 2195 techinge
J, SA, FWK touchynge (touching) AM . . . Bz, AdBTA 2203
þei (þey) acorden AdBT

[THE SUPPLICATION.]

Fulfil of loves fantasie,
 And with the teres of myn ye
 In stede of enke I gan to wryte
 The wordes whiche I wolde endite
 Unto Cupide and to Venus,
 And in mi lettre I seide thus.

Hic tractat formam
 cuiusdam Supplicacionis,
 quam ex parte Amantis per manus
 Genii Sacerdotis sui
 Venus sibi porrectam
 acceptabat.

THE wofull peine of loves maladie,
 Ayein the which mai no phisque availe,
 Min herte hath so bewhaped with sotie,
 That wher so that I reste or I travaille, 2220
 I finde it evere redy to assaile
 Mi resoun, which that can him noght defende:
 Thus seche I help, wherof I mihte amende.

Ferst to Nature if that I me compleigne,
 Ther finde I hou that every creature
 Som time ayer hath love in his demeine,
 So that the litel wrenne in his mesure
 Hath yit of kinde a love under his cure;
 And I bot on desire, of which I misse:
 And thus, bot I, hath every kinde his blisse. 2230

The resoun of my wit it overpasseth, P. iii. 350
 Of that Nature techeth me the weie
 To love, and yit no certein sche compasseth
 Hou I schal spede, and thus between the tweie
 I stonde, and not if I schal live or deie.
 For thogh reson ayein my will debate,
 I mai noght fle, that I ne love algate.

Upon miself is thilke tale come,
 Hou whilom Pan, which is the god of kinde,
 With love wrastlede and was overcome: 2240
 For evere I wrastle and evere I am behinde,
 That I no strengthe in al min herte finde,
 Wherof that I mai stonden eny throwe;
 So fer mi wit with love is overthrowe.

2214 wol(c) AdBT 2220 or I trauaille J, S, F the rest or
 trauaille 2228 a love] of loue AM . . . B, BT (Ha) love of
 kinde jit Ad) 2240 was] is AdBT

[THE SUPPLICATION.]

Whom nedeth help, he mot his helpe crave,
 Or helpeles he schal his nede spille:
 Pleinly thurghsoght my wittes alle I have,
 Bot non of hem can helpe after mi wille;
 And als so wel I mihte sitte stille,
 As preie unto mi lady eny helpe: 2250
 Thus wot I noght wherof miself to helpe.

Unto the grete Jove and if I bidde,
 To do me grace of thilke swete tunne,
 Which under keie in his celier amidde
 Lith couched, that fortune is overrunne,
 Bot of the bitter cuppe I have begunne,
 I not hou ofte, and thus finde I no game;
 For evere I axe and evere it is the same.

I se the world stonde evere upon eschange, P. iii. 351
 Nou wyndes loude, and nou the weder softe; 2260
 I mai sen ek the grete mone change,
 And thing which nou is lowe is eft alofte;
 The dredfull werres into pes fulofte
 Thei torne; and evere is Danger in o place,
 Which wol noght change his will to do me grace.

Bot upon this the grete clerc Ovide,
 Of love whan he makth his remembrance,
 He seith ther is the blinde god Cupide,
 The which hath love under his governance,
 And in his hond with many a fyrri lance 2270
 He woundeth ofte, ther he wol noght hele;
 And that somdiel is cause of mi querele.

Ovide ek seith that love to parforne
 Stant in the hond of Venus the goddesse,
 Bot whan sche takth hir conseil with Satorne,
 Ther is no grace, and in that time, I gesse,
 Began mi love, of which myn hevynesse
 Is now and evere schal, bot if I spede:
 So wot I noght miself what is to rede.

2247 jurgout BT 2251 helpe AdBTA 2257 I fynde
 BTA 2270 his om. B 2271 wher AdBT

[THE SUPPLICATION.]

Forthi to you, Cupide and Venus bothe, 2280
 With al myn hertes obeissance I preie,
 If ye were ate ferste time wrothe,
 Whan I began to love, as I you seie,
 Nou stynt, and do thilke infortune aweie,
 So that Danger, which stant of retenue
 With my ladi, his place mai remue.

O thou Cupide, god of loves lawe, P. iii. 352
 That with thi Dart brennende hast set afyre
 Min herte, do that wounde be withdrawe,
 Or yif me Salve such as I desire: 2290
 For Service in thi Court withouten hyre
 To me, which evere yit have kept thin heste,
 Mai nevere be to loves lawe honeste.

O thou, gentile Venus, loves queene,
 Withoute gult thou dost on me thi wreche;
 Thou wost my peine is evere aliche grene
 For love, and yit I mai it nocht areche:
 This wold I for my laste word beseche,
 That thou mi love aquite as I deserve,
 Or elles do me pleynly forto sterve. 2300

[VENUS REPLIES TO
THE SUPPLICATION.]Hic loquitur qualiter
Venus, accepta Aman-
tis Supplicatione, in-
dilate ad singula re-
spondit.

Whanne I this Supplicacioun
 With good deliberacioun,
 In such a wise as ye nou wite,
 Hadde after min entente write
 Unto Cupide and to Venus,
 This Prest which hihte Genius
 It tok on honde to presente,
 On my message and forth he wente
 To Venus, forto wite hire wille.
 And I bod in the place stille, 2310
 And was there bot a litel while,
 Noght full the montance of a Mile,
 Whan I behield and sodeinly
 I sih wher Venus stod me by.
 So as I myhte, under a tre P. iii. 353

2284 þis infortune AdBT þilke fortune B₁, Δ that like infortune W
 2294 gentile AJ, S, F gentil C, B 2298 wold J, S, F wolde AC, B

[VENUS REPLIES TO
THE SUPPLICATION.]

To grounde I fell upon mi kne,
 And preide hire forto do me grace:
 Sche caste hire chiere upon mi face,
 And as it were halvinge a game
 Sche axeth me what is mi name. 2320
 'Ma dame,' I seide, 'John Gower.'
 'Now John,' quod sche, 'in my pouer
 Thou most as of thi love stonde;
 For I thi bille have understonde,
 In which to Cupide and to me
 Somdiel thou hast compleigned thee,
 And somdiel to Nature also.
 Bot that schal stonde among you tuo,
 For therof have I nocht to done;
 For Nature is under the Mone 2330
 Maistressè of every lives kinde,
 Bot if so be that sche mai finde
 Som holy man that wol withdrawe
 His kindly lust ayein hir lawe;
 Bot sielde whanne it falleth so,
 For fewe meñ ther ben of tho,
 Bot of these othre ynowe be,
 Whiche of here oghne nycete
 Ayein Nature and hire office
 Deliten hem in sondri vice, 2340
 Wherof that sche fulofte hath pleigned,
 And ek my Court it hath desdeigned
 And evere schal; for it receiveth
 Non such that kinde so deceiveth.
 For al onliche of gentil love P. iii. 354
 Mi court stant alle courtz above
 And takth nocht into retenue
 Bot thing which is to kinde due,
 For elles it schal be refused.
 Wherof I holde thee excused, 2350
 For it is manye daies gon,

2319 a game AJMRL, AdT in game Δ in game W 2320
 is] was A . . . B₁, SBTΔ 2332 if] it AMXE . . . B₁, B 2334
 Hire B 2342 disteigned AH₁XRLB₁ disteigned M
 restreigned E

* *

G g

[VENUS REPLIES TO
THE SUPPLICATION.]

That thou amonges hem were on
Which of my court hast ben withholde;
So that the more I am beholde
Of thi desese to commune,
And to remue that fortune,
Which manye daies hath the grieved.
Bot if my conseil mai be lieved,
Thou schalt ben esed er thou go
Of thilke unsely jolif wo, 2360
Wherof thou seist thin herte is fyred:
Bot as of that thou hast desired
After the sentence of thi bille,
Thou most therof don at my wille,
And I therof me wole advise.
For be thou hol, it schal suffice:
Mi medicine is noght to sieke
For thee and for suche olde sieke,
Noght al per chance as ye it wolden,
Bot so as ye be reson scholden, 2370
Acordant unto loves kinde.
For in the plit which I thee finde,
So as mi court it hath awarded,
Thou schalt be duely rewarded;
And if thou woldest more crave, P. iii. 355
It is no riht that thou it have.'

iii. *Qui cupit id quod habere nequit, sua tempora perdit,
Est ubi non posse, velle salute caret.
Non estatis opus gelidis hirsuta capillis,
Cum calor abcessit, equiperabit hiems;
Sicut habet Mayus non dat natura Decembri,
Nec poterit compar floribus esse lutum;
Sic neque decrepita senium iuvenile voluptas
Floret in obsequium, quod Venus ipsa petit.
Conueniens igitur foret, ut quos cana senectus
Attigit, ulterius corpora casta colant.* (10)

2367 f. Two lines om. S... Δ (ins. Δ) 2368 The which is
holsom to þe seke H... B₂
2369 f. Noght al as þou desire woldest
Bot so as þou be reson scholdest S... Δ
2371-2376 Six lines om. S... Δ
Latin Verses iii. 8 obsequium] obsessum X... L. obsessum B₂

[VENUS REPLIES TO
THE SUPPLICATION.]

Venus, which stant withoute lawe
In noncertein, bot as men drawe
Of Rageman upon the chance,
Sche leith no peis in the balance,
Bot as hir lyketh forto weie;
The trewe man fulofte aweie
Sche put, which hath hir grace bede,
And set an untrewe in his stede.
Lo, thus blindly the world sche diemeth
In loves cause, as tome siemeth:
I not what othre men wol sein,
Bot I algate am so besein,
And stonde as on amonges alle
Which am out of hir grace falle: 2390
It nedeth take no witesse,
For sche which seid is the goddesse,
To whether part of love it wende,
Hath sett me for a final ende
The point wherto that I schal holde.
For whan sche hath me wel beholde,
Halvyng of scorn, sche seide thus: P. iii. 356
'Thou wost wel that I am Venus,
Which al only my lustes seche;
And wel I wot, thogh thou beseche 2400
Mi love, lustes ben ther none,
Whiche I mai take in thi persone;
For loves lust and lockes hore
In chambre acorden neveremore,
And thogh thou feigne a yong corage,
It scheweth wel be the visage
That olde gisel is no fole:
There ben fulmany yeres stole
With thee and with suche othre mo,
That outward feignen youthe so 2410

2379 ff. margin Hic in exemplum—redarguit] Hic narrat qualiter
indignata Venus, amantis languidi infirmitatem inspiciens, ne quid
amplius in curia sua attemptare presumat, ipsum insufficientem tan-
quam pro medicina pluribus exemplis exhortabatur S... ΔA 2386
tome S, F to me AJC, B 2387 wolde H... B₂, AdBT
2403 Mi loues AM, A My loue AdBT (Ad ends with this line)
2409 with om. AM... B₂, BT

[VENUS REPLIES TO
THE SUPPLICATION.]

And ben withinne of pore assay,
 Min herte wolde and I ne may
 Is nocht beloved nou adayes;
 Er thou make eny suche assaies
 To love, and faile upon the fet,
 Betre is to make a beau retret;
 For thogh thou myhtest love atteigne,
 Yit were it bot an ydel peine,
 Whan that thou art nocht sufficient
 To holde love his covenant. 2420
 Forthi tak hom thin herte ayein,
 That thou travaile nocht in vein,
 Wherof my Court may be deceived.
 I wot and have it wel conceived,
 Hou that thi will is good ynowh;
 Bot mor behoveth to the plowh,
 Wherof the lacketh, as I trowe: P. iii. 357
 So sitte it wel that thou beknowe
 Thi fieble astat, er thou beginne
 Thing wher thou miht non ende winne. 2430
 What bargain scholde a man assaie,
 Whan that him lacketh forto paie?
 Mi Sone, if thou be wel bethoght,
 This toucheth thee; foryet it nocht:
 The thing is torned into was;
 That which was whilom grene gras,
 Is welked hey at time now.
 Forthi mi conseil is that thou
 Remembre wel hou thou art old.
 Whan Venus hath hir tale told, 2440
 And I bethoght was al aboute,
 Tho wiste I wel withoute doute,
 That ther was no recoverir;
 And as a man the blase of fyr
 With water quencheth, so ferd I;

2428 sitte AJC, F sit B 2433 if þat þou wel beþoght (be
 þoght) X . . . B₂, BTA if that thou wel the be thought H_r 2436
 The which AM . . . B₂, BTA (þat whilom was þe grene gras Δ)
 2437 as time now AM . . . B₂, BTA 2441 Than I AM, BA
 Whan I Hi . . . B₂, T 2442 And wist(e) wr' AM . . . B₂, BTA
 2445 ferd AJ, S, F ferde C, B

[THE COMPANIES OF
LOVERS.]

Qualiter super deri-
 soria Veneris exhor-
 tacione contristatus
 Amans, quasi mortuus
 in terram corruit, ubi,
 vt sibi videbatur, Cupi-

[THE COMPANIES OF
LOVERS.]

dinem cum innumera
 multitudine nuper
 Amantum variis tur-
 mis assistencium con-
 spiciebat. 2450

A cold me cawhte sodeinly,
 For sorwe that myn herte made
 Mi dedly face pale and fade
 Becam, and swoune I fell to grounde.
 And as I lay the same stounde,
 Ne fully quik ne fully ded,
 Me thoghte I sih tofor myn hed
 Cupide with his bowe bent,
 And lich unto a Parlement,
 Which were ordeigned for the nones,
 With him cam al the world at ones
 Of gentil folk that whilom were P. iii. 358
 Lovers, I sih hem alle there
 Forth with Cupide in sondri routes.
 Min yhe and as I caste aboutes, 2460
 To knowe among hem who was who,
 I sih wher lusty Youthe tho,
 As he which was a Capitein,
 Tofore alle othre upon the plein
 Stod with his route wel begon,
 Here hevedes kempt, and therupon
 Garlandes nocht of o colour,
 Some of the lef, some of the flour,
 And some of grete Perles were;
 The newe guise of Beawme there, 2470
 With sondri thinges wel devised,
 I sih, wherof thei ben queintised.
 It was al lust that thei with ferde,
 Ther was no song that I ne herde,
 Which unto love was touchende;
 Of Pan and al that was likende
 As in Piping of melodie
 Was herd in thilke compaignie
 So lowde, that on every side
 It thoghte as al the hevene cride 2480
 In such acord and such a soun
 Of bombard and of clarion
 With Cornemuse and Schallemele,

2446 And cold AM 2462 line om. B 2476 margin Pan
 id est deus nature A . . . B₂

[THE COMPANIES OF
LOVERS.]

That it was half a mannes hele
 So glad a noise forto hie.
 And as me thoghte, in this manere
 Al freissh I syh hem springe and dance, P. iii. 359
 And do to love her entendance
 After the lust of youthes heste.
 Ther was ynowh of joie and feste, 2490
 For evere among thei laghe and pleie,
 And putten care out of the weie,
 That he with hem ne sat ne stod.
 And overthis I understod,
 So as myn Ere it myhte areche,
 The moste matiere of her speche
 Was al of knythhod and of Armes,
 And what it is to ligge in armes
 With love, whanne it is achieved.

Ther was Tristram, which was believed 2500
 With bele Ysolde, and Lancelot
 Stod with Gunnore, and Galahot
 With his ladi, and as me thoghte,
 I syh wher Jason with him broghte
 His love, which that Creusa hihte,
 And Hercules, which mochel myhte,
 Was ther berende his grete Mace,
 And most of alle in thilke place
 He peyneth him to make chiere
 With Eolen, which was him diere. 2510

Theseüs, thogh he were untrewre
 To love, as alle wommen knewe,
 Yit was he there natheles
 With Phedra, whom to love he ches:
 Of Grece ek ther was Thelamon,
 Which fro the king Lamenedon
 At Troie his doghter reft aweie, P. iii. 360
 Eseonen, as for his preie,
 Which take was whan Jason cam
 Fro Colchos, and the Cite nam 2520
 In vengeance of the ferste hate;
 That made hem after to debate,

2497 It was AM . . . B2, BT

De nominibus illorum nuper Amantum, qui tunc Amanti spasmatō, aliqui iuuenes, aliqui senes, apparuerunt. Senes autem precipue tam erga deum quam deam amoris pro sanitate Amantis recuperanda multiplicatis precibus misericorditer instabant.

[THE COMPANIES OF
LOVERS.]

Whan Priamus the newe toun
 Hath mad. And in avisoun
 Me thoghte that I sih also
 Ector forth with his brethren tuo;
 Himself stod with Pantaselee,
 And next to him I myhte se,
 Wher Paris stod with faire Eleine,
 Which was his joie sovaine; 2530
 And Troilus stod with Criseide,
 Bot evere among, although he pleide,
 Be semblant he was hevy chiered,
 For Diomedē, as him was liered,
 Cleymeth to ben his parconner.
 And thus full many a bachelere,
 A thousand mo than I can sein,
 With Yowthe I sih ther wel besein
 Forth with here loves glade and blithe.

And some I sih whiche ofte sithe 2540
 Compleignen hem in other wise;
 Among the whiche I syh Narcise
 And Piramus, that sory were.
 The worthy Grek also was there,
 Achilles, which for love deide:
 Agamenon ek, as men seide,
 And Menelay the king also P. iii. 361
 I syh, with many an other mo,
 Which hadden be fortunē sore
 In loves cause.

And overmore 2550
 Of wommen in the same cas,
 With hem I sih wher Dido was,
 Forsake which was with Enee;
 And Phillis ek I myhte see,
 Whom Demephon deceived hadde;
 And Adriagne hir sorwe ladde,
 For Theseüs hir Soster tok
 And hire unkindely forsok.
 I sih ther ek among the press
 Compleignende upon Hercules 2560

2543 Priamus AM, B, W

[THE COMPANIES OF
LOVERS.]

His ferste love Deyanire,
 Which sette him afterward a fyre :
 Medea was there ek and pleigneth
 Upon Jason, for that he feigneth,
 Withoute cause and tok a newe ;
 Sche seide, 'Fy on alle untrewē !'
 I sih there ek Deydamie,
 Which hadde lost the compaignie
 Of Achilles, whan Diomedē
 To Troie him fette upon the nede. 2570
 Among these othre upon the grene
 I syh also the wofull queene
 Cleopatras, which in a Cave
 With Serpentz hath hirself begrave
 Alquik, and so sche was totore,
 For sorwe of that sche hadde lore
 Antonye, which hir love hath be: P. iii. 362
 And forth with hire I sih Tisbee,
 Which on the scharpe swerdes point
 For love deide in sory point ; 2580
 And as myn Ere it myhte knowe,
 She seide, 'Wo worthe alle slowe !'
 The pleignte of Progne and Philomene
 Ther herde I what it wolde mene,
 How Tereüs of his untrouthe
 Undede hem bothe, and that was routhe ;
 And next to hem I sih Canace,
 Which for Machaire hir fader grace
 Hath lost, and deide in wofull plit.
 And as I sih in my spirit, 2590
 Me thoghte amonges othre thus
 The doghter of king Priamus,
 Polixena, whom Pirrus slowh,
 Was there and made sorwe ynowh,
 As sche which deide gulteles
 For love, and yit was loveles.
 And forto take the desport,
 I sih there some of other port,

2573 graue BT 2575 Alquik F Al quik AJ, SB, K 2598
 jere F jcr (jcr) AJC, B

[THE COMPANIES OF
LOVERS.]

And that was Circes and Calipse,
 That cowthen do the Mone eclipse, 2600
 Of men and change the liknesses,
 Of Artmagique Sorceresses ;
 Thei hielde in honde manyon,
 To love wher thei wolde or non.
 Bot above alle that ther were
 Of wommen I sih foure there,
 Whos name I herde most comended : P. iii. 363
 Be hem the Court stod al amended ;
 For wher thei comen in presence,
 Men deden hem the reverence, 2610
 As thogh they hadden be goddesses,
 Of al this world or Emperesses.
 And as me thoghte, an Ere I leide,
 And herde hou that these othre seide,
 'Lo, these ben the foure wyves,
 Whos feith was proeved in her lyves :
 For in essample of alle goode
 With Mariage so thei stode,
 That fame, which no gret thing hydeth,
 Yit in Cronique of hem abydeth.' 2620
 Penelope that on was hote,
 Whom many a knyht hath loved hote,
 Whil that hire lord Ulixes lay
 Full many a yer and many a day
 Upon the grete Siege of Troie :
 Bot sche, which hath no wordes joie
 Bot only of hire housebonde,
 Whil that hir lord was out of londe,
 So wel hath kept hir wommanhiede,
 That al the world therof tok hiede, 2630
 And nameliche of hem in Grece.
 That other womman was Lucrece,
 Wif to the Romain Collatin ;
 And sche constreigned of Tarquin
 To thing which was ayein hir wille,
 Sche wolde nocht hirselves stille,
 Bot deide only for drede of schame P. iii. 364

2623 Vluxe BT

[THE COMPANIES OF
LOVERS.]

In keping of hire goode name,
As sche which was on of the beste.

The thridde wif was hote Alceste, 2640
Which whanne Ametus scholde dye
Upon his grete maladye,
Sche preide unto the goddes so,
That sche receyveth al the wo
And deide himself to yive him lif:
Lo, if this were a noble wif.

The ferthe wif which I ther sih,
I herde of hem that were nyh
Hou sche was cleped Alcione,
Which to Seyix hir lord al one 2650
And to nomo hir body kepte;
And whan sche sih him dreynt, sche lepte
Into the wawes where he swam,
And there a Sefoul sche becam,
And with hire wenges him bespradde
For love which to him sche hadde.

Lo, these foure were tho
Whiche I sih, as me thoghte tho,
Among the grete compaignie
Which Love hadde forto guye: 2660
Bot Youthe, which in special
Of Loves Court was Mareschal,
So besy was upon his lay,
That he non hiede where I lay
Hath take. And thanne, as I behield,

Me thoghte I sih upon the field,
Where Elde cam a softe pas P. iii. 365
Toward Venus, ther as sche was.
With him gret compaignie he ladde,
Bot nocht so manye as Youthe hadde: 2670
The moste part were of gret Age,
And that was sene in the visage,

2646 Lo, if] See wher AM . . . B₁, BT 2650 Which Ceix
(om. to) B Which to seke X Which for to se W 2653 wawe
A . . . B₁, S . . . Δ 2656 which] jat AM . . . B₁, BT 2664
he lay X, BT (line om. Δ p. m.) 2670 manye] fele AM . . . B₁, BT
2672 here visage AM . . . B₁, BT

[THE COMPANIES OF
LOVERS.]

And nocht forthi, so as thei myhte,
Thei made hem yongly to the sihte:
Bot yit herde I no pipe there
To make noise in mannes Ere,
Bot the Musette I myhte knowe,
For olde men which souneth lowe,
With Harpe and Lute and with Citole.
The hovedance and the Carole, 2680
In such a wise as love hath bede,
A softe pas thei dance and trede;
And with the wommen otherwhile
With sobre chier among thei smyle,
For lughtre was ther non on hyh.
And natheles full wel I syh
That thei the more queinte it made
For love, in whom thei weren glade.

And there me thoghte I myhte se
The king David with Bersabee, 2690
And Salomon was nocht withoute;
Passende an hundred on a route
Of wyves and of Concubines,
Juesses bothe and Sarazines,
To him I sih alle entendant:
I not if he was sufficant,
Bot natheles for al his wit P. iii. 366
He was attached with that writ
Which love with his hond enseleth,
Fro whom non erthly man appeleth. 2700
And overthis, as for a wonder,
With his leon which he put under,
With Dalida Sampson I knew,
Whos love his strengthe al overthrew.

I syh there Aristotle also,
Whom that the queene of Grece so
Hath bridled, that in thilke time

2675 pipes AM . . . B₁, BT piper Δ 2676 noise] mer]e
AM . . . B₁, BT 2678 sowned AM . . . B₁, BT 2694 Iuesses
eck AM Iues bope (Iewes both) KW Iewes (Iues &c.) eek Hi . . . B₁,
BT 2696 wher he was AM wher(e) he were X . . . B₁, BT
if he were H, W 2701 no wonder B 2702 put AJ, F
putte C, B 2706 so] also E, BT jo Δ

[THE COMPANIES OF
LOVERS.]

Sche made him such a Silogime,
That he foryat al his logique ;
Ther was non art of his Practique, 2710
Thurgh which it mihte ben excluded
That he ne was fully concluded
To love, and dede his obeissance.
And ek Virgile of aqueintance
I sih, wher he the Maiden preide,
Which was the doghter, as men seide,
Of themperour whilom of Rome ;
Sortes and Plato with him come,
So dede Ovide the Poete.
I thoghte thanne how love is swete, 2720
Which hath so wise men reclaimed,
And was miself the lasse aschamed,
Or forto lese or forto winne
In the meschief that I was inne:
And thus I lay in hope of grace.
And whan thei comen to the place
Wher Venus stod and I was falle, P. iii. 367
These olde men with o vois alle
To Venus preiden for my sake.
And sche, that myhte noght forsake 2730
So gret a clamour as was there,
Let Pite come into hire Ere ;
And forth withal unto Cupide
Sche preith that he upon his side
Me wolde thurgh his grace sende
Som confort, that I myhte amende,
Upon the cas which is befallē.
And thus for me thei preiden alle
Of hem that weren olde aboute, 2740
And ek some of the yonge route,
Of gentillesse and pure trouthe
I herde hem telle it was gret routhē,
That I withouten help so ferde.
And thus me thoghte I lay and herde.

Cupido, which may hurte and hele
In loves cause, as for myn hele

[CUPID AND THE
LOVER.]

Upon the point which him was preid
Cam with Venus, wher I was leid
Swounende upon the grene gras.
And, as me thoghte, anon ther was 2750
On every side so gret presse,
That every lif began to presse,
I wot noght wel hou many score,
Suche as I spak of now tofore,
Lovers, that comen to beholde,
Bot most of hem that weren olde :
Thei stoden there at thilke tyde, P. iii. 368
To se what ende schal betyde
Upon the cure of my sotie.
Tho myhte I hiere gret partie
Spekende, and ech his oghne avis
Hath told, on that, an other this :
Bot among alle this I herde,
Thei weren wo that I so ferde,
And seiden that for no riote
An old man scholde noght assote ;
For as thei tolden redely,
Ther is in him no cause why,
Bot if he wolde himself benyce ;
So were he wel the more nyce. 2770
And thus desputen some of tho,
And some seiden nothing so,
Bot that the wylde loves rage
In mannes lif forberth non Age ;
Whil ther is oyle forto fyre,
The lampe is lyhtly set afyre,
And is fulhard er it be queynt,
Bot only if it be som seint,
Which god preserveth of his grace.
And thus me thoghte, in sondri place 2780
Of hem that walken up and doun
Ther was diverse opinioun :
And for a while so it laste,
Til that Cupide to the laste,

Hic tractat qualiter
Cupido Amantis se-
nectute contracti vis-
cera perscrutans, igni-
tae concupiscencie
tela ab eo penitus ex-
trahit, quem Venus
postea absque calore
percipiens, vacuum
reliquit: et sic tandem
prouisa Senectus, ra-
tionem inuocans, ho-
minem interiozem per
prius amore infatua-
tum mentis sanitati
plenius restaurauit.

2760

2770

2780

Nota.

2769 benyce J, S, FK be nyce (by nice &c.) AM . . . B₁, BT_Δ, W
2775 margin Nota LB₁, F Nota bene C om. A . . . R, SBT_Δ, WK

[THE FIERY DART
WITHDRAWN.]

Forth with his moder full avised,
Hath determined and devised
Unto what point he wol descende. P. iii. 369

And al this time I was liggende
Upon the ground tofore his yhen,
And thei that my desese syhen 2790

Supposen nocht I scholde live;
Bot he, which wolde thanne yive
His grace, so as it mai be,

This blinde god which mai nocht se,
Hath groped til that he me fond;
And as he pitte forth his hond

Upon my body, wher I lay,
Me thoughte a fyr Lancegay,
Which whilom thurgh myn herte he caste,

He pulleth oute, and also faste 2800
As this was do, Cupide nam
His weie, I not where he becam,

And so dede al the remenant
Which unto him was entendant,
Of hem that in Avision

I hadde a revelacion,
So as I tolde now tofore.

Bot Venus wente nocht therefore,
Ne Genius, whiche thilke time
Abiden bothe faste byme. 2810

And sche which mai the hertes bynde
In loves cause and ek unbinde,
Er I out of mi trance aros,

Venus, which hield a boiste clos,
And wolde nocht I scholde deie,
Tok out mor cold than eny keie

An oignement, and in such point P. iii. 370
Sche hath my wounded herte enoignt,
My temples and my Reins also.

And forth withal sche tok me tho 2820
A wonder Mirour forto holde,

2796 pitte F putte AJC, SB 2809 whiche S, F which
AJC, B 2819 *margin* Nota contra senes voluptuosos, quorum
calor refrigerescente natura extinctus est SBTΔ (om. A)

[THE HEALING OF
LOVE.]

In which sche bad me to beholde
And taken hiede of that I syhe;
Wherinne anon myn hertes yhe

I caste, and sih my colour fade,
Myn yhen dymme and al unglade,
Mi chiekes thinne, and al my face

With Elde I myhte se deface,
So riveled and so wo besein,
That ther was nothing full ne plein, 2830

I syh also myn heres here.
Mi will was tho to se nomore
Outwith, for ther was no plesance;

And thanne into my remembrance
I drowh myn olde daies passed,
And as reson it hath compassed,

I made a liknesse of miselve
Unto the sondri Monthes twelve,
Wherof the yeer in his astat 2840

Is mad, and stant upon debat,
That lich til other non acordeth.
For who the times wel recordeth,

And thanne at Marche if he beginne,
Whan that the lusti yeer comth inne,
Til Augst be passed and Septembre,

The myhty youthe he may remembre
In which the yeer hath his deduit P. iii. 371
Of gras, of lef, of flour, of fruit,

Of corn and of the wyny grape.
And afterward the time is schape 2850
To frost, to Snow, to Wind, to Rein,

Til eft that Mars be come ayein:
The Wynter wol no Somer knowe,
The grene lef is overthrowe,

The clothed erthe is thanne bare,
Despuiled is the Somerfare,

2833 Outwiþ SΔ, FWK Out wiþ AJM, TA Therwiþ (Ther wiþ)
Hi . . . B; On which B 2837 *margin* equipatur A equipatur
C, BT, F 2848 of flour of lef AM . . . CB; and floure of leef L
2850 þis time Hi . . . B; 2856 Somerfare S, F somer fare
AJC, B

Quod status hominis
Mensibus anni equi-
peratur.

[THE HEALING OF
LOVE.]

That erst was hete is thanne chele.

And thus thenkende thoghtes fele,

I was out of mi swoune affraied,

Wherof I sih my wittes straied,

And gan to clepe hem hom ayein.

And whan Resoun it herde sein

That loves rage was aweie,

He cam to me the rihte weie,

And hath remued the sotie

Of thilke unwise fantasie,

Wherof that I was wont to pleigne,

So that of thilke fyri peine

I was mad sobre and hol ynowh.

Venus behield me than and lowh,

And axeth, as it were in game,

What love was. And I for schame

Ne wiste what I scholde ansuere;

And natheles I gan to swere

That be my trouthe I knew him nocht;

So ferr it was out of mi thought,

Riht as it hadde nevere be.

'Mi goode Sone,' tho quod sche,

'Now at this time I lieve it wel,

So goth the fortune of my whiel;

Forthi mi conseil is thou leve.'

'Ma dame,' I seide, 'be your leve,

Ye witen wel, and so wot I,

That I am unbehovely

Your Court fro this day forth to serve:

And for I may no thonk deserve,

And also for I am refused,

I preie you to ben excused.

And natheles as for the laste,

Whil that my wittes with me laste,

Touchende mi confession

I axe an absolucion

Of Genius, er that I go.'

2860 straid] frayed AM . . . B₂
2889 for to laste BT

2885 forth] for EC, BTA

[THE ABSOLUTION.]

The Prest anon was redy tho,
And seide, 'Sone, as of thi schrifte
Thou hast ful pardoun and foryifte;
Foryet it thou, and so wol I.'

'Min holi fader, grant mercy,'

Quod I to him, and to the queene
I fell on knes upon the grene,
And tok my leve forto wende.Bot sche, that wolde make an ende,
As therto which I was most able,
A Peire of Bedes blak as Sable
Sche tok and heng my necke aboute;

Upon the gaudes al withoute

Was write of gold, *Por reposer.*

'Lo,' thus sche seide, 'John Gower,

Now thou art ate laste cast,

This have I for thin ese cast,

That thou nomore of love sieche.

Bot my will is that thou besieche

And preie hierafter for the pes,

And that thou make a plein reles

To love, which takth litel hiede

Of olde men upon the nede,

Whan that the lustes ben aweie:

Forthi to thee nys bot o weie,

In which let reson be thi guide;

For he may sone himself misguide,

That seth nocht the peril tofore.

Mi Sone, be wel war therefore,

And kep the sentence of my lore

And tarie thou mi Court nomore,

Bot go ther vertu moral duelleth,

Wher ben thi bokes, as men telleth,

Whiche of long time thou hast write.

For this I do thee wel to wite,

If thou thin hele wolt purchace,

Thou miht nocht make suite and chace,

2899 the om. AM 2907 pur AM . . . B₂, B, W pour H, T
2925 moral vertu AM . . . B₂, W vertu morar S 2926 Wher
ben þe M, TA Ther ben þe B

Amans.

2900

[LEAVE-TAKING OF
VENUS.]

P. iii. 373

2910

2920

2930

[LEAVE-TAKING OF
VENUS.]

Wher that the game is nought pernabile;
 It were a thing unresonable,
 A man to be so overseie.
 Forthi tak hiede of that I seie;
 For in the lawe of my comune
 We be nought schape to comune,
 Thiself and I, nevere after this. P. iii. 374
 Now have y seid al that ther is
 Of love as for thi final ende:
 * Adieu, for y mot fro the wende.' 2940
 And with that word al sodeinly, P. iii. 375

[LEAVE-TAKING OF
VENUS.]

* Adieu, for I mot fro the wende.
 And gret wel Chaucer whan ye mete, 2941*
 As mi disciple and mi poete:
 For in the floures of his youthe
 In sondri wise, as he wel couthe,
 Of Ditees and of songes glade,
 The whiche he for mi sake made,
 The lond fulfild is overal:
 Wherof to him in special
 Above alle othre I am most holde.
 For thi now in hise daies olde 2950*
 Thow schalt him telle this message,
 That he upon his latere age,
 To sette an ende of alle his werk,
 As he which is myn owne clerk,
 Do make his testament of love,
 As thou hast do thi schrifte above,
 So that mi Court it mai recorde.
 'Madame, I can me wel acorde,'
 Quod I, 'to telle as ye me bidde.'
 And with that word it so betidde, 2960*

2931 pernabile J, SA, FK parnable W prouable (prouable)
 AM . . . B₂, BTA 2938 Here begins a new hand in F and ll. 2938-
 2966 are over an erasure.

2941* ff. This conclusion is in first recension copies only, A . . . B₂ &c.
 But ll. 2941*-2961* also in A. All variations from A are noted.
 2949* moost A 2953* eende A al J 2960* world
 AMX betidde (bitidde) JH₁ECB₂ by tydde (be tidde) AMRL

[LEAVE-TAKING OF
VENUS.]

Enclosid in a sterred sky,
 Venus, which is the queene of love,
 Was take in to hire place above,
 More wiste y nought wher sche becam. P. iii. 376
 And thus my leve of hire y nam,
 And forth with al the same tide
 Hire prest, which wolde nought abide,
 Or be me lief or be me loth, P. iii. 377
 Out of my sighte forth he goth, 2950
 And y was left with outhen helpe.
 So wiste I nought wher of to yelpe,
 Bot only that y hadde lore
 My time, and was sori ther fore.
 And thus bewhapid in my thought, P. iii. 378
 Whan al was turnyd in to nought,
 I stod amasid for a while,
 And in my self y gan to smyle
 Thenkende uppon the bedis blake,
 And how they weren me betake, 2960
 For that y schulde bidde and preie.
 And whanne y sigh non othre weie
 Bot only that y was refusid,
 Unto the lif which y hadde usid
 I thoughte nevere torne ayein:
 And in this wise, soth to seyn,
 Homward a softe pas y wente,
 Wher that with al myn hol entente

Out of my sihte al sodeynly,
 Enclosed in a sterred sky,
 Up to the hevene Venus straghte,
 And I my rihte weie cawhte,
 Hom fro the wode and forth I wente,
 Wher as with al myn hole entente,

[LEAVE-TAKING OF
VENUS.]

2942 serred S 2945 wiste ST wist B, F 2946 hiru
 (hir) BTA, WK here S, F 2968 hol B, F hole S
 2961* sihte (sighte) JR syht (sight) AMH₁ECLB₂ 2963* f.
 straghte : cawhte AM strauhte : cauhte J straght(e) : caght(e) RL
 straughte : caughte EC 2964* rihte (rihte) JEC riht (right)
 AMH₁R 2965* Hoom AM and om. C 2966* hole J hoole AM

Uppon the point that y am schryve
I thenke bidde whil y live.

2970

[THE AUTHOR PRAYS
FOR THE STATE OF
ENGLAND.]

iv. *Parce precor, Criste, populus quo gaudeat iste;
Anglia ne triste subeat, rex summe, resiste.
Corrige quosque status, fragiles absolue reatus;
Vnde deo gratus vigeat locus iste beatus.*

Hic in anno quarto-
decimo Regis Ricardi
orat pro statu regni,
quod a diu diuisum
nimia aduersitate peri-
clitabatur.

He which withinne daies sevene
This large world forth with the hevene
Of his eternal providence
Hath mad, and thilke intelligence
In mannys soule resonable
Hath schape to be perdurable,
Wherof the man of his feture
Above alle erthli creature
Aftir the soule is immortal,

Thus with mi bedes upon honde,
For hem that trewe love fonde
I thenke bidde whil I lyve
Uppon the poynt which I am schryve.

2970*

[THE AUTHOR PRAYS
FOR THE KING.]

iv.* *Ad laudem Cristi, quem tu, virgo, peperisti,
Sit laus Ricardi, quem sceptrā colunt leopardi.
Ad sua precepta compleui carmina cepta,
Que Bruti nata legat Anglia perpetuata.*

Hic in fine libri
honorificos que virtu-
osos illustrissimi Prin-
cipis domini sui Regis
Anglie Ricardi secun-
di mores, sicut dig-
num est, laude com-
mendabili describens,
pro eiusdem status
salubri conseruacione

He which withinne dayes sevene
This large world forth with the hevene
Of his eternal providence
Hath mad, and thilke intelligence
In mannes soule resonable
Enspired to himself semblable,
Wherof the man of his feture
Above alle erthly creature
After the soule is immortal,

2970 lieue F 2971 The J, B 2973 ff. margin Hic in anno
—perclitabatur SΔ, FK om. BTA, W
2967* f. hoonde: foonde AM
Latin Verses iv.* 3 cepra AM
2974* mad J maad A 2978* erly C eerly AM erly JH.ERLB:

To thilke lord in special,
As he which is of alle thinges
The creatour, and of the kynges
Hath the fortunes uppon honde,
His grace and mercy forto fonde
Uppon my bare knes y preie,
That he this lond in siker weie
Wol sette uppon good governance.
For if men takyn remembrance
What is to live in unite,
Ther ys no staat in his degree
That noughte to desire pes,
With outen which, it is no les,
To seche and loke in to the laste,
Ther may no wordes joye laste.

2980 [THE AUTHOR PRAYS
FOR THE STATE OF
ENGLAND.]
P. iii. 379

2990

Ferst forto loke the Clergie,
Hem oughte wel to justefie
Thing which belongeth to here cure,
As forto praie and to procure
Oure pes toward the hevene above,
And ek to sette reste and love

[EVIL OF DIVISION
IN THE LAND.]

3000

To thilke lord in special,
As he which is of alle thinges
The creatour, and of the kinges
Hath the fortunes upon honde,
His grace and mercy forto fonde
Uppon mi bare knees I preye,
That he my worthi king conveye,
Richard by name the Secounde,
In whom hath evere yit be founde
Justice medled with pite,
Largesse forth with charite.
In his persone it mai be schewed
What is a king to be wel thewed,
Touchinge of pite namely:

2980* [THE AUTHOR PRAYS
FOR THE KING.]
cunctipotentem deuo-
cius exorat.

2990*

2987 Wol] Wel S 2989 lieue BTA, W lieue S, FK 2994
wordles F
2983* f. hoonde: foonde AM 2987* be J 2988* byfounde A
by founde M

[EVIL OF DIVISION
IN THE LAND.]

Among ous on this erthe hiere.
For if they wroughte in this manere
Aftir the reule of charite,
I hope that men schuldyn se
This lond amende.

And ovyr this,
To seche and loke how that it is
Touchende of the chevalerie,
Which forto loke, in som partie
Is worthi forto be comendid,
And in som part to ben amendid, ³⁰¹⁰
That of here large retenue **P. iii. 380**
The lond is ful of maintenue,
Which causith that the comune right
In fewe contrees stant upright.
Extorcioun, kontek, ravine
Withholde ben of that covyne,
Aldai men hierin gret compleignte
Of the desease, of the constreignte,
Wher of the poeple is sore oppressid :

[THE KING
COMMENDED.]

For he yit nevere unpitously
Ayein the liges of his lond,
For no defaute which he fond,
Thurgh cruelte vengauce soghte ;
And thogh the worldes chaunce in broghte
Of infortune gret debat, ^{3000*}
Yit was he not infortunat :
For he which the fortune ladde,
The hihe god, him overspradde
Of his Justice, and kepte him so,
That his astat stood evere mo
Sauf, as it oghte wel to be ;
Lich to the Sonne in his degree,
Which with the clowdes up alofte

³⁰⁰⁵ f. Paragraph begins And over his S To seche FWK No
Paragraph BT ³⁰⁰⁶ how jat is B howe it is W ³⁰¹³
comune (commune) SBT, F comyn W ³⁰¹⁵ kontekt FK
contect SBT Contek W contek and Magd contel and Δ
²⁹⁹⁵* L loond : foond A ²⁹⁹⁸* inbroughte JH: ³⁰⁰³*
kepte ECB: kepte AJMH:RL ³⁰⁰⁵* bee A

3020 [EVIL OF DIVISION
IN THE LAND.]

God graunte it mote be redressid.
For of knyghthode thordre wolde
That thei defende and kepe scholde
The comun right and the fraunchise
Of holy cherche in alle wise,
So that no wikke man it dere,
And ther fore servith scheld and spere :
Bot for it goth now other weie,
Oure grace goth the more aweie.

And forto lokyn ovyrmore, ³⁰³⁰
Wher of the poeple pleigneth sore,
Toward the lawis of oure lond,
Men sein that trouthe hath broke his bond
And with brocage is goon aweie,
So that no man can se the weie
Wher forto fynde rightwisnesse.
And if men sechin sikernesse
Uppon the lucre of marchandie,
Compasement and tricherie
Of singuler profit to wyne,
Men seyn, is cause of mochil synne, ³⁰⁴⁰
And namely of divisoun, **P. iii. 381**
Which many a noble worthi toun

Is derked and bischadewed ofte,
But hou so that it trowble in their,
The Sonne is evere briht and feir, ^{3010*}
Withinne himself and nocht empeired :
Althogh the weder be despeired,
The hed planete is not to wite.
Mi worthi prince, of whom I write,
Thus stant he with himselve clier,
And doth what lith in his power
Not only hier at hom to seke

[THE KING
COMMENDED.]

³⁰²³ comun B, F comune ST ³⁰²⁶ per fore (perfore) FK
perof (per of) SBTΔ, W ³⁰³⁷ machandie F merchandie S
³⁰⁰⁸* bischadewed (byshadewed) AMH:E by schadewed (by
schadowed) RCLB: beschaded J ³⁰⁰⁹* Bot JH: ³⁰¹¹*
Wijn AM ³⁰¹³* hed (hede) JM heed A heued H:E . . . B:
³⁰¹⁵* f. clier : power J cleer : poweer A ³⁰¹⁶* doop AM
³⁰¹⁷* only hier at hom to seke J oonly heer athoom to seeke A

[EVIL OF DIVISION
IN THE LAND.]

Fro welthe and fro prosperite
 Hath brought to gret adversite.
 So were it good to ben al on,
 For mehil grace ther uppon
 Unto the Citees schulde falle,
 Which myghte availle to ous alle,
 If these astatz amendid were,
 So that the vertus stodyn there 3050
 And that the vices were aweie:
 Me thenkth y dorste thanne seie,
 This londis grace schulde arise.

[THE DUTY OF
A KING.]

Bot yit to loke in othre wise,
 Ther is a stat, as ye schul hierie,
 Above alle othre on erthe hierie,
 Which hath the lond in his balance:
 To him belongith the leiance
 Of Clerk, of knyght, of man of lawe;
 Undir his hond al is forth drawe 3060
 The marchant and the laborer;
 So stant it al in his power
 Or forto spille or forto save.
 Bot though that he such power have,
 And that his myghtes ben so large,
 He hath hem nought withouten charge,
 To which that every kyng ys swore:
 So were it good that he ther fore

[THE KING
COMMENDED.]

Love and acord, but outward eke,
 As he that save his poeple wolde.
 So ben we alle wel beholde 3070*
 To do service and obeysaunce
 To him, which of his heyh suffraunce
 Hath many a gret debat appesed,

3046 mehil F mekull W mochil SBT 3054 o]re wise S, F
 o]er w. BTA, WK 3060 is al B 3063 forto . . . forto S
 for to . . . forto F for to . . . for to BT 3066 w]outen F
 w]oute SBT
 3018* acord JER acorde AC eeke AEC 3020* been AMC
 by holde AM 3022* hihe H.RLBs hic J 3023* a gret
 (agret) JCL a grete (agrete) AMHs &c.

[THE DUTY OF
A KING.]

First un to rightwisnesse entende,
 Wherof that he hym self amende 3070
 Toward his god and leve vice,
 Which is the chief of his office;
 And aftir al the remenant
 He schal uppon his covenant
 Governe and lede in such a wise,
 So that ther be no tirandise,
 Wherof that he his poeple grieve,
 Or ellis may he nought achieve
 That longith to his regalie.
 For if a kyng wol justifie 3080
 His lond and hem that beth withynne,
 First at hym self he mot begynne,
 To kepe and reule his owne astat,
 That in hym self be no debat
 Toward his god: for othre wise
 Ther may non erthly kyng suffice
 Of his kyngdom the folk to lede,
 Bot he the kyng of hevene drede.
 For what kyng sett hym uppon pride
 And takth his lust on every side 3090
 And wil nought go the righte weie,
 Though god his grace caste aweie
 No wondir is, for ate laste
 He schal wel wite it mai nought laste,
 The pompe which he secheth here.

[THE KING
COMMENDED.]

To make his lige men ben esed;
 Wherfore that his Croniqe schal
 For evere be memorial
 To the loenge of that he doth.
 For this wot every man in soth,
 What king that so desireth pes,
 He takth the weie which Crist ches: 3030*
 And who that Cristes weies sueth,

3081 be] F ben (be) SBTΔ, WK 3085 o]re wise F o]rwise S
 o]erwise BT othir wyse W 3094 nou]t F no]ht S nought B
 not T, W
 3024* been A 3027* f. doo]t: soo]t AMR 3029* f. pees: chees AMR

Bot what kyng that with humble chere
 Aftir the lawe of god eschuieth
 The vices, and the vertus suieth,
 His grace schal be suffisant
 To governe al the remenant 3100
 Which longith to his duite; P. iii. 383
 So that in his prosperite
 The poeple schal nought ben oppressid,
 Wherof his name schal be blessid,
 For evere and be memorial.
 And now to speke as in final,
 Touchende that y undirtok
 In englesch forto make a book

[THE BOOK
COMPLETED.]

Hic in fine recapit-

[THE KING
COMMENDED.]

It proveth wel that he eschueth
 The vices and is vertuous,
 Wherof he mot be gracious
 Toward his god and acceptable.
 And so to make his regne stable,
 With al the wil that I mai yive
 I preie and schal whil that I live,
 As I which in subjeccioun 3040*
 Stonde under the proteccioun,
 And mai miselven not bewelde,
 What for seknesse and what for elde,
 Which I receyve of goddes grace.
 But thogh me lacke to purchase
 Mi kinges thonk as by decerte,
 Yit the Simplese of mi poverté
 Unto the love of my ligance
 Desireth forto do plesance:
 And for this cause in myn entente
 This povere bok heer I presente 3050*
 Unto his hihe worthinesse,
 Write of my simple besinesse,

3098 vertu B

3033* f. vertuows: graciows AM 3036* And for to CB: maake
 A 3040* Stoonde AM the] his J 3041* by welde AMH.
 3042* seknesse AMH:R 3045* be J 3050* bok J book AC
 3052* besinesse (besynesse) JH:RL bisinesse A busynesse C

Which stant betwene earnest and game,
 I have it maad as thilke same
 Which axe forto ben excusid,
 And that my bok be nought refusid
 Of lered men, whan thei it se,
 For lak of curiosite:
 For thilke scole of eloquence
 Belongith nought to my science,
 Uppon the forme of rethorike
 My wordis forto peinte and pike,
 As Tullius som tyme wrot.
 Bot this y knowe and this y wot, 3110
 That y have do my trewe peyne
 With rude wordis and with pleyne,
 In al that evere y couthe and myghte,
 This bok to write as y behighte,
 So as siknesse it soffre wolde;
 And also for my daies olde,

[THE BOOK
COMPLETED.]

3110 ulat super hoc quod in
 principio libri primi
 promisit se in amoris
 causa specialius trac-
 taturum. Concludit
 enim quod omnis
 amoris delectatio
 extra caritatem nichil
 est. Qui autem manet
 in caritate, in deo
 manet.

3120

So as seknesse it suffre wolde.
 And in such wise as I ferst tolde,
 Whan I this bok began to make,
 In som partie it mai be take
 As for to lawhe and forto pleye;
 And forto loke in other weye,
 It mai be wisdom to the wise:
 So that somdel for good aprise 3060*
 And eek somdel for lust and game
 I have it mad, as thilke same
 Which axe forto ben excused,
 That I no Rethorike have used
 Upon the forme of eloquence,
 For that is not of mi science;
 But I have do my trewe peyne
 With rude wordes and with pleyne

[THE AUTHOR PRE-
SENTS HIS BOOK TO
THE KING.]

3113 whanne F

3053* seeknesse (seknesse) JC seeknesse (seknesse &c.) AMH:K
 3055* book by gan to maake A 3056* by taake A 3058*
 looke A 007er AM 3060* f. somdeel A 3061* of game J
 3062* as AJM for H:XRCLB: 3063* been A

[THE BOOK
COMPLETED.]

That y am feble and impotent,
I wot nought how the world ys went.
So preye y to my lordis alle
Now in myn age, how so befallē, ³¹³⁰
That y mot stonden in here grace: P. iii. 384
For though me lacke to purchase
Here worthi thonk as by decerte,
Yit the symplesse of my povertē
Desireth forto do plesance
To hem undir whos governance
I hope siker to abide.

[FAREWELL TO
EARTHLY LOVE.]

But now uppon my laste tide
That y this book have maad and write,
My muse doth me forto wite, ³¹⁴⁰
And seith it schal be for my beste
Fro this day forth to take reste,
That y nomore of love make,

[FAREWELL TO
EARTHLY LOVE.]

To speke of thing which I have told. ^{3070*}
But now that I am feble and old,
And to the worschipe of mi king
In love above alle other thing
That I this bok have mad and write,
Mi Muse doth me forto wite
That it is to me for the beste
Fro this day forth to take reste,
That I nomore of love make.
But he which hath of love his make
It sit him wel to singe and daunce,
And do to love his entendance ^{3080*}
In songes bothe and in seyinges
After the lust of his pleyinges,
For he hath that he wolde have:
But where a man schal love crave
And faile, it stant al otherwise.

3131 mot ST, W mote B, F
3069* f. toold : oold A 3070* Bot J 3072* oo}er A
3073* book A &c. 3074* doo} AM 3076* taake A 3077*
nomoore of loue maake A 3078* Bot J maake A 3079* sit J
sitte AMRCLBz 3084* Bot J 3085* aloo}erwise A

[FAREWELL TO
EARTHLY LOVE.]

Which many an herte hath overtake,
And ovyrturnd as the blynde
Fro reson in to lawe of kynde;
Wher as the wisdom goth aweie
And can nought se the ryhte weie
How to governe his oghne estat,
Bot everydai stant in debat ³¹⁵⁰
Withinne him self, and can nought leve.
And thus forthy my final leve
I take now for evere more,
Withoute makynge any more,
Of love and of his dedly hele,
Which no phisicien can hele.
For his nature is so divers,
That it hath evere som travers
Or of to moche or of to lite,
That pleinely mai noman delite, ³¹⁶⁰
Bot if him faile or that or this. P. iii. 385
Bot thilke love which that is
Withinne a mannes herte affermed,
And stant of charite confermed,

In his proverbe seith the wise,
Whan game is best, is best to leve:
And thus forthi my fynal leve,
With oute makynge eny more, ^{3090*}
I take now for evere more
Of love and of his dedly hele,
Which no phisicien can hele.
For his nature is so divers,
That it hath evere som travers
Or of to moche or of to lite,
That fully mai noman delyte,
But if him lacke or that or this.
But thilke love which that is
Withinne a mannes herte affermed,

3147 Hand in F changes again 3150 eueyrdai F euey day
SBT 3160 noman F no man SBT
3087* Whan game is beste A 3089* f. moore : moore A
3091* f. heele : heele AM 3097* f. Bot J

[HEAVENLY LOVE.]

Such love is goodly forto have,
 Such love mai the bodi save,
 Such love mai the soule amende,
 The hye god such love ous sende
 Forthwith the remenant of grace ;
 So that above in thilke place
 Wher resteth love and alle pes,
 Oure joie mai ben endeles.

3170

*Explicit iste liber, qui transeat, obsecro liber
 Ut sine liuore vigeat lectoris in ore.
 Qui sedet in scannis celi det ut ista Iohannis
 Perpetuis annis stet pagina grata Britannis.
 Derbeie Comiti, recolunt quem laude periti,
 Vade liber purus, sub eo requiesce futurus.*

[HEAVENLY LOVE.]

And stant of charite confermed,
 That love is of no repentaile ;
 For it ne berth no contretaille,
 Which mai the conscience charge,
 But it is rather of discharge,
 And meedful heer and overal.
 Forthi this love in special
 Is good for every man to holde,
 And who that resoun wol beholde,
 Al other lust is good to daunte :
 Which thing the hihe god us graunte
 Forth with the remenant of grace
 So that of hevene in thilke place
 Wher resteth love and alle pes,
 Oure joye mai ben endeles.

3100*

3110*

3169 flor]wi] F flor] wi] SBT
 EXPLICIT 5 f. Last two lines om. AJCL 6 sub eo que recumbe S
 3104* Bot J 3106* love om. AM 3107* hoolde A 3108*
 wol byholde (biholde) ARCL wil biholde B₂ wel be holde J wel
 byholde M 3110* ous J 3113* pees AMC 3114* been
 endeles AM At the end Amen MXERCLB₂

*Epistola super huius opusculi sui complementum
 Iohanni Gower a quodam philosopho transmissa.*

Quam cinxere freta, Gower, tua carmina leta
 Per loca discreta canit Anglia laude repleta.
 Carminis Athleta, satirus, tibi, siue Poeta,
 Sit laus completa quo gloria stat sine meta.

Quia vnusquisque, prout a deo accepit, aliis impartiri
 tenetur, Iohannes Gower super hiis que deus sibi sen-
 sualiter donauit villicacionis sue racionem, dum tempus
 instat, secundum aliquid alleuiare cupiens, inter labores
 5 et ocia ad aliorum noticiam tres libros doctrine causa
 forma subsequenti propterea composuit.

Primus liber Gallico sermone editus in decem diuiditur
 partes, et tractans de viciis et virtutibus, necnon et de
 variis huius seculi gradibus, viam qua peccator trans-
 10 gressus ad sui creatoris agnitionem redire debet, recto
 tramite docere conatur. Titulusque libelli istius Speculum
 Meditantis nuncupatus est.

Secundus enim liber sermone latino metrico compositus
 tractat de variis infortuniis tempore Regis Ricardi Secundi
 15 in Anglia contingentibus. Vnde non solum regni proceres

EPISTOLA huius operis sui AJECL huius operis vel opusculi sui
 XRB₂ huius opusculi A

QUIA VNUSQUISQUE ms. AJXERCLB₂, BTA, F om. S₂, Magd
 (MHG, Ad, WKH₂ defective at the end)

1 Qvula F 2 sensualiter] intellectualiter A . . . B₂ 3 dum
 tempus instat om. BTA 4 ff. inter labores—composuit] tres precipue
 libros per ipsum dum vixit doctrine causa compositos ad aliorum
 noticiam in lucem seriose produxit. BTA

8 f. necnon—gradibus om. BTA 9 ff. viam—conatur] viam pre-
 cipue qua peccator in penitendo Cristi misericordiam assequi poterit,
 tota mentis deuocione finaliter contemplatur BTA 11 Titulusque]
 titulus AX . . . B₂ Speculum hominis A . . . B₂ Speculum
 mediantis B

13 ff. Secundus enim liber, sermone latino versibus exametri
 et pentametri compositus, tractat super illo mirabili euentu qui
 in Anglia (anglica J) tempore domini Regis Ricardi secundi
 anno regni sui quarto contigit, quando seruales rustici impetuose
 contra nobiles et ingenuos regni insurrexerunt. Innocenciam tamen

et communes tormenta passi sunt, set et ipse crudelissimus rex suis ex demeritis ab alto corruens in foueam quam fecit finaliter proiectus est. Nomenque voluminis huius Vox Clamantis intitilatur.

Tercius iste liber qui ob reuerenciam strenuissimi domini 20
sui domini Henrici de Lancastria, tunc Derbeie Comitis, Anglico sermone conficitur, secundum Danielis propheciam super huius mundi regnorum mutacione a tempore regis Nabugodonosor vsque nunc tempora distinguit. Tractat eciam secundum Aristotilem super hiis quibus 25
rex Alexander tam in sui regimen quam aliter eius disciplina edoctus fuit. Principalis tamen huius operis materia super amorem et infatuatas amantum passiones fundamentum habet. Nomenque sibi appropriatum Confessio Amantis specialiter sortitus est. 30

dicti domini Regis tunc minoris etatis causa inde excusabilem pronuncians, culpas aliunde, ex quibus et non a fortuna talia inter homines contingunt enormia, euidentius declarat. Titulusque voluminis huius, cuius ordo Septem continet paginas, Vox clamantis nominatur A . . . B₂

Secundus liber versibus exametri et pentametri sermone latino componitur, tractat de variis infortuniis tempore regis Ricardi secundi in Anglia multipliciter contingentibus, vbi pro statu regni compositor deuocius exorat. Nomenque voluminis huius, quod in septem diuiditur partes, Vox clamantis intitilatur BTA

20 ff. Tercius iste liber (liber iste J) Anglico sermone in octo partes diuisus, qui ad instanciam serenissimi Principis dicti domini Regis Anglie Ricardi secundi conficitur A . . . B₂ Tercius iste liber qui in octo partes diuisus ob reuerenciam stren. dom. sui dom. Henrici de Lanc. &c. BT 24 vsque in nunc T distingui B 25 Nectanabum et Aristotilem A . . . B₂ 26 regimine X . . . B₂ 26 f. eius disciplina—materia om. AX . . . B₂ eorum disciplina &c. J 27 operis] libri J 28 ff. super amorem et amantum condiciones fundamentum habet: vbi variarum Cronicarum historiarumque sentencie, necnon Poetarum Philosophorumque scripture ad exemplum distinccius inseruntur. Nomenque presentis opusculi Confessio Amantis specialiter intitilatur. A . . . B₂ (but all except J have finem for sentencie). 30 specialiter om. A